

**SAVANNAH ENTREPRENEURSHIP EDUCATION - A LEVEL PAPER 2**



**SAVANNAH - ENTREPRENEURSHIP EDUCATION**

**FOR A LEVEL**

**PAPER 2**

**Any submissions or inquiries on this manual are highly welcome.**

**Facebook: Walugembe Lawrence**

**Twitter: lawrencewalu256**

**WhatsApp: 0759748844**

**Email: warenwaren2@gmail.com**

**Mobile: 0783177885 or +256792 328466**

**Look for Paper 2 and 3 by the same author with more revision questions.**

**©Copyright reserved.**

**Designed for entrepreneurs, teachers and students.**

***Written by Walugembe Lawrence @Kyotera District.***

## **Part A:: PROJECT MANAGEMENT SKILLS/OUTLINE.**

### **1. BUSINESS PLANNING SKILLS**

- i. Executive summary
- ii. General description of a business.
- iii. Statement of vision, mission, goals and objectives
- iv. Production plan
- v. Marketing plan
- vi. Organizational/ human resource/ administrative/ management plan
- vii. Financial plan
- viii. Action plan

Other supporting files in the business plan.

- ix. Budgets which include:
  - Operational budget
  - Ordinary/ general budget
  - Functional budgets
    - Capital expenditure budget
    - Marketing budget
    - Pre-operating expenditure budget
    - Utility budget
    - Production budget
- x. Plant layout
- xi. Profile of the business
- xii. Project proposal
- xiii. Site plan
- xiv. Work plan

**2. CERTIFICATES**

- i. Certificate of incorporation
- ii. Certificate of recognition
- iii. Share certificate

**3. CHARTS**

- i. Communication chart
- ii. Machinery layout
- iii. Organizational chart
- iv. Process flow chart

**4. CORRESPONDENCE/ COMMUNICATION SKILLS**

- i. Agenda
- ii. Apology
- iii. Application letters
- iv. Appointment letter
- v. Appreciation letter
- vi. Business letters
- vii. Circular
- viii. Complaining letters
- ix. Credit status inquiry
- x. Invitation letters
- xi. Memo
- xii. Minutes
- xiii. Notice

- xiv. Notice for dismissal of a worker to the general public
- xv. Recommendation letter
- xvi. Report
- xvii. Termination letter
- xviii. Warning letters

## **5. DOCUMENTS USED IN A WORK PLACE**

- i. Arrival book
- ii. Assets register
- iii. Cash record book
- iv. Cheque payment voucher
- v. Daily time report
- vi. Daily time sheet
- vii. Debtor payment voucher
- viii. Evaluation worksheet
- ix. Identity card
- x. Job cost sheet
- xi. Pay roll
- xii. Pay slip
- xiii. Payment voucher
- xiv. Petty cash voucher
- xv. Roster
- xvi. Stock card
- xvii. Visitors book

## **6. DOCUMENTS USED IN TRADE**

- i. Bill of exchange

- ii. Cash deposit slip
- iii. Cash sale slip
- iv. Catalogue
- v. Cheque
- vi. Cheque deposit slip
- vii. Consignment note
- viii. Credit note/ letter of credit
- ix. Delivery note
- x. Dispatch note
- xi. Goods received note
- xii. Goods returned note
- xiii. Invoice
- xiv. Letter of inquiry
- xv. Package sheet
- xvi. Price current
- xvii. Price list
- xviii. Proforma invoice
- xix. Promissory note
- xx. Purchase contract note
- xxi. Purchase order
- xxii. Quotation
- xxiii. Receipt
- xxiv. Standing order
- xxv. Statement of account
- xxvi. Tax invoice
- xxvii. Tender notice/ invitation for bids

xxviii. Withdraw slip

## **7. FORMS**

- i. Client information form
- ii. Field visit guide
- iii. Funds requisition form
- iv. Interview guide
- v. Job application form
- vi. Loan application form
- vii. Market assessment guide
- viii. Market survey guide
- ix. Medical form
- x. Performance appraisal form
- xi. Questionnaire
- xii. Stock requisition form
- xiii. SWOT analysis guide
- xiv. Work order form

## **8. Human resource management**

- ❖ Job advertisement
- ❖ Job description
- ❖ Job specification
- ❖ Curriculum vitae
- ❖ Employee personal record card

## **9. MARKETING**

- i. Advert for goods
- ii. Advert for sale of assets/ assets disposal
- iii. Advert for services
- iv. Banners
- v. Bill boards
- vi. Brochure
- vii. Business card
- viii. Contract information board
- ix. Flier
- x. Label
- xi. Logo
- xii. Menu
- xiii. Newspaper advert
- xiv. Posters
- xv. Prospectus
- xvi. Radio announcement
- v. Sign post
- vi. Marketing flow chart

#### **10. POLICY DOCUMENT WRITING**

- i. Borrowing/ credit policy
- ii. Cleanliness guidelines
- iii. Code of conduct to ensure discipline
- iv. Credit policy
- v. Employment contract
- vi. Environmental impact assessment policy



- vii. Guidelines followed on receipt of items from suppliers
- viii. Guidelines for developing creative ability of the staff
- ix. Guidelines for effective gender partnership
- x. Guidelines for ensuring hygiene in the work place
- xi. Guidelines for ensuring sustainability
- xii. Guidelines for handling machinery
- xiii. Guidelines for selecting machinery and equipment
- xiv. Guidelines for selling on credit
- xv. Guidelines to ensure gender balance of employees
- xvi. Guidelines to ensure proper inventory management
- xvii. Guidelines to minimize accidents/ safety
- xviii. Guidelines to minimize production costs
- xix. Guidelines to promote innovative ability of employees
- xx. Hire purchase agreement
- xxi. Job requirements
- xxii. Partnership deed
- xxiii. Policy guidelines for retention of the employees
- xxiv. Procurement policy
- xxv. Quality guidelines
- xxvi. Rules and regulations
- xxvii. Sale of land agreement
- xxviii. Security guidelines
- xxix. Security guidelines
- xxx. Store management policy
- xxxi. Terms and conditions for a contract
- xxxii. Terms and conditions for sale of the old tractor

- xxxiii. Terms and conditions for selling on hire purchase
- xxxiv. Vehicle maintenance policy
- xxxv. Welfare guidelines

## **11. PROGRAMMES**

- i. Credit recovery programme
- ii. Induction programme
- iii. Interview programme
- iv. Launching programme
- v. Machine maintenance program
- vi. Program for minimizing risks
- vii. Program for obtaining a loan
- viii. Programme for a one day training and sensitization workshop
- ix. Programme for handling indiscipline cases
- x. Programme for obtaining insurance policy
- xi. Programme for preparing for negotiation
- xii. Programme for tax compliance
- xiii. Programme to be followed when purchasing business requirements
- xiv. Promotion programme
- xv. Recruiting programme
- xvi. Training programme

## **12. SCHEDULES**

- i. Daily work schedule
- ii. Loan repayment schedule
- iii. Master daily work schedule

- iv. Production schedule
- v. Supply/ distribution schedule
- vi. Vehicle service schedule
- vii. Vehicle travel schedule
- viii. Work schedule

### **13. SOCIAL ENTREPRENEURSHIP**

- i. Components of social enterprise plan
- ii. Gepic structure for advocacy
- iii. Opportunity identification
- iv. Programme for becoming a social entrepreneur
- v. Programme for visionary approach
- vi. Root cause analysis
- vii. Theory of change

### **Part B :: FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT**

- 1) Definition of financial management
- 2) Importance of financial management
- 3) Sources of finance, Merits and demerits of each
- 4) Loans and their management
- 5) Financial needs of a business
- 6) Business budgets
- 7) Financial statements I.e Income statement and balance sheet
- 8) Preparation of final accounts with and without adjustments.
- 9) Book keeping

10) Financial ratios and their interpretation

11) Cash flow statements.

#### Part C:: BUSINESS TAXES

- A. Definition of a tax and taxation.
- B. Importance of taxation
- C. Terms used in taxation
- D. Principles of taxation
- E. Classification of taxes.
- F. Direct Versus Indirect taxes.
- G. Tax exemptions
- H. Employee rights and obligations.
- I. Problems of taxation
- J. Tax evasion, avoidance and compliance
- K. Structure of Uganda's tax system
- L. Tax revenue
- M. Tax computations.

## PROJECT MANAGEMENT DETAILS

### **BUSINESS PLAN**

i. Executive summary

This is the second thing in the business plan after the table of contents. It summarizes the key points of a document for its readers, saving them time and preparing them for the upcoming content. It's the executive people (readers) time they would have spent going through the whole document. E.g

LAVAS CHICKEN TONIGHT

P.O BOX 234, KAMPALA

TEL: 0783177885

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Lavas chicken tonight is located in Wandegaya, Kampala, Uganda, is a snacks selling business specializing in producing high quality snacks and packaging them for sale. The business was established to offer classic snacks to the growing University Campus out-going population area as well as to serve an ever-increasing market of urban professionals who enjoy eating more adventurous specialty fast foods.

Research indicates that the fast foods and snacks industry in Uganda has annual sales of shs. 3,600,000 and is growing at an annual rate of approximately 30%. The gross profit margin in the fast foods and snacks industry are typically between 30% and 40%. There is essentially a growing snack consuming population in Kampala and a big percentage of this population purchase high quality snacks and fast foods on a monthly basis.

As a sole proprietor, I have managed to hire services of a graduate in Business Administration as a General Manager and a graduate of food science and technology as an operations manager with a few other workers.

There are three direct competitors for our share of the market. Although all three seem to be thriving there are a number of fronts on which we are competing. Price is the strongest factor: all three competitors sell their products at higher prices than our business. Our strong relationship with large scale poultry farmers and suppliers of chicken products and suppliers of other products enables us to get raw materials at lower cost and therefore to sell at lower prices to our customers. In addition, the three competitors have focused primarily on the rich section of the urban population but our enterprise reaches out mostly to the average and advertised low income earners and student population.

In order to reach out and support our customers, our products are advertised and promoted in the following ways

Sponsorship of a snacks preparation show on NTV

A website, which raises awareness of our products.

Distribution of flyers in hostels and halls of residence

In addition to the management and staff mentioned above, I have a board of advisors who add strategic advice and direction. The board consists of Lukwago John, a lawyer, Macumi Peter lecturer in Faculty of Food Science and Technology at Makerere University and Bangi Evans, Director Bangi Business Consultants Ltd.

I am seeking an operating line of shs. 5,000,000 to finance our growth in year two. I have invested shs.

10,000,000 in the previous years in packaging, design, product and market research and towards working capital requirements.

ii. General description of a business.

PREMIUM QUALITY SNACKS

P.O BOX 275, KYOTERA

Email: [premiumqs@gmail.com](mailto:premiumqs@gmail.com)

**PROJECT GENERAL DESCRIPTION**

Business name and address: The business name is Premium Quality Snacks and its address is P.o Box 275, Kyotera.

Business location: the business is located Kabano parish, Kasasa sub county, Kakuuto county, Kyotera

|                                                                                                                   |             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| District in Uganda                                                                                                |             |
| Purpose of the business.                                                                                          |             |
| Vision: The leading producers of quality snacks in Kyotera district.                                              |             |
| Mission: To improve people's diet through provision of quality snacks at lower prices.                            |             |
| Business type: it is a Manufacturing business.                                                                    |             |
| Business nature of ownership: it owned as a Partnership                                                           |             |
| Business products: its products include; Popcorns, Fried Irish.                                                   |             |
| Business customers: these include Schools, retailers in Kyotera district.                                         |             |
| Uniqueness of business: Providing quality snacks, well fried in different colors and shapes sold at lower prices. |             |
| Sources of funds: the sources of funds are Member's contribution and personal savings.                            |             |
| Period or date of formation: June 2019                                                                            |             |
| Description of business assets and premises: it has no premises but has assets such as buckets, jerricans, cash   |             |
| SWOT Analysis of the business project.                                                                            |             |
| Project strengths: high demand, friendly prices, possession of marketing skills                                   |             |
| Project Weaknesses: Small capital base, Limited skills.                                                           |             |
| Project Opportunities: Large customer base, supportive patron and school administration.                          |             |
| Project Threats: Tight academic schedules, insecurity, accidents                                                  |             |
| PREPARED BY                                                                                                       | APPROVED BY |
|                                                                                                                   |             |

iii. Statement of vision, mission, goals and objectives

**BUSINESS PROJECT VISION:** This describes what the business is to be in the future.

**BUSINESS PROJECT MISSION:** This indicates the purpose of the business. It has two parts i.e. "Needs" part and "how" to achieve the needs.

**BUSINESS PROJECT GOALS:** These are long term targets that the business intends to



achieve. They are based on the mission statement.

**BUSINESS PROJECT OBJECTIVES.** They are specific targets to move the business in the direction of achieving goals. They are achieved within 1 year.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p style="text-align: center;"><b>BEST MEALS RESTAURANT</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;">P.O BOX 234, KYOTERA.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">TEL. 0759748844</p>                                                            |
| <p><b>PROJECT VISION STATEMENT</b></p> <p>“The leading provider of high quality local foods in Kyotera.</p>                                                                                                                            |
| <p><b>PROJECT MISSION STATEMENT</b></p> <p>“To improve people’s diet through providing high quality meals at affordable prices.</p>                                                                                                    |
| <p><b>PROJECT GOALS</b></p> <p>To increase sales by 40% in 2years</p> <p>To attain 60% of the market share in a period of 3 years.</p> <p>To open up 2 more branches in a period of 2 years</p> <p>To employ 6 people in 5 years</p>   |
| <p><b>PROJECT OBJECTIVES.</b></p> <p>To increase sales by 10% in six months</p> <p>To attain 15% of the market share in 8 months.</p> <p>To open up 1 branch this year in October</p> <p>To employ one worker this year in August.</p> |

i. Production plan

|                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p style="text-align: center;"><b>KASOLO JUICES</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;">P.O BOX 23, KYOTERA</p> <p style="text-align: center;">TEL. 0759748844</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## PRODUCTION PLAN

**Business site.** Kyotera town opposite Centenary bank- Kyotera district Uganda.

Production Process flow. The business still uses manual production system where juice is cooked manually on firewood using saucepans

**Plant capacities required.** The resent demand id 200 boxes per week

Specification of machines, tools and equipments required. It has no machines yet but equipment such as saucepan

| DETAILS AND SPECIFICATION | QTY | UNIT COST (SHS) | TOTAL COST (SHS) |
|---------------------------|-----|-----------------|------------------|
| Generator                 | 1   | 2,000,000       | 2,000,000        |
| Blenders                  | 2   | 400,000         | 800,000          |
| Stabilizer                | 1   | 800,000         | 800,000          |
| Filters                   | 4   | 150,000         | 600,000          |
| Capping machines          | 2   | 300,000         | 600,000          |
| Labeling machine          | 1   | 600,000         | 600,000          |
| Packaging machine         | 1   | 1,000,000       | 1,000,000        |
| Total cost                |     |                 | 6,400,000        |

**Estimated production quantity:** the business produces 100 boxes per week

Production standards and quality objectives. The business aims at meeting UNBS quality standards.

**Raw materials and consumables.** They include fruits, flavours, sugar, water, citric acid, food colour, preservatives.

| Type of raw materials    | quantit<br>y | Unit cost (shs) | Total cost (shs) |
|--------------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------------|
| Natural identical flavor |              |                 | 700,000          |
| Sugar                    |              |                 | 500,000          |
| Citric acid              |              |                 | 230,000          |

|               |  |  |         |
|---------------|--|--|---------|
| Fruits        |  |  | 180,000 |
| Preservatives |  |  | 212,000 |
| TOTAL         |  |  |         |

**Labour requirements.** The business plans to employ 2 technicians, 3 casual assistants.

| POSITION         | NO. | WAGE (SHS) | ALLOWANCES | AMOUNT    |
|------------------|-----|------------|------------|-----------|
| Technicians      | 2   | 450,000    | 200,000    | 1,300,000 |
| Casual assistant | 3   | 170,000    | -          | 510,000   |

**Packaging.** Juice is packaged in plastic jerrycans and bottles and finally enclosed in boxes.

| Type of packaging material | Qty  | Unit cost | Amount (shs) |
|----------------------------|------|-----------|--------------|
| Jerrycans (all sizes)      | 1000 |           | 700,000      |
| Bottles (all sizes)        | 2000 |           | 300,000      |
| Boxes                      | 2000 | 100       | 200,000      |
| Polythene bags (100ml)     | 500  | 20        | 100,000      |
| TOTAL                      |      |           | 1,300,000    |

**Power and utilities.** It uses electricity, water.

**Transport.** It hires a vehicle to move the raw materials from sources of supply to the market and finished juices to the market. The monthly transport cost for raw materials is estimated at shs. 200,000 and finished products at shs. 473,000/= including costs on fuel.

**Other facilities required.** The business bought 20 office chairs 25 office tables, 5 refrigerators, a television set, a computer, a printer and some stationery.

| Item | no | Unit cost (shs) | Amount (shs) |
|------|----|-----------------|--------------|
|------|----|-----------------|--------------|

|                  |   |         |                 |
|------------------|---|---------|-----------------|
| Computer         | 1 | 600,000 | 600,000         |
| Printer          | 1 | 900,000 | 900,000         |
| Office tables    | 2 | 100,000 | 200,000         |
| Office chairs    | 3 | 40,000  | 120,000         |
| Refrigerator     |   |         | 700,000         |
| Television set   |   |         | 400,000         |
| Source documents |   |         | 150,000         |
| Other stationery |   |         | 300,000         |
| <b>TOTAL</b>     |   |         | <b>3370,000</b> |

**Purchase and re-order level.** The business buys materials in bulk to obtain discounts arising from bulk purchases and reduce transportation costs. The re- order level for all items is a half of the total quantity required weekly.

**Waste disposal.** Waste products include fruit husks. These are used in production of bio gas to supplement the power used and some is sold to piggery farmers. Wastes are not burnt neither disposed in environment nor water bodies

## ii. Marketing plan

This is the analysis of the possible position and opportunities of the business being planned in the present market situation.

KAKODI MAIZE MILLERS

P.O BOX 251, IGANGA

0783177885

MARKETING PLAN

Target customers: our target customers include residents/ people and institutions (schools, hospitals etc) in Iganga town council and all surrounding areas in the whole of Iganga District, Individuals and schools need maize flour on daily basis while those who rear animals need maize brand and other animal needs.

Products to be offered: Our products include maize flour for both food and porridge and maize brand. Products are packaged in bags and sacks. We also offer smaller packages of maize flour in smaller proportions of 1kg, 3kg and 5kg in paper bags to cater for all income levels of customers.

Position of competitors. There are few competitors in our target area including Quality maize millers, Nakaseke grain millers and Cheap Maize Packers. All these factories have been in operation over the past five years and are therefore well known to the customers but have poor distribution strategies and the quality of their products is still wanting. I expect to outcompete them by expanding my distribution points, extensive advertising, producing better quality products and selling at lower but profitable prices.

Pricing and sales: prices of our products are set depending on the costs of production, level of demand, and prices charged by my competitors. The price structure and projected sales of the factory are given below.

The pricing structure for Kakodi Maize Millers.

| Products    | My prices  | Competitors' price | Difference |
|-------------|------------|--------------------|------------|
| Maize flour | 600 per kg | 700 per kg         | 100        |
| Maize brand | 500 per kg | 650 per kg         | 150        |

Projected sales per month.

| Products              | Quantity      | Price      | Amount     |
|-----------------------|---------------|------------|------------|
| Maize flour           | 50,000 kgs    | 600 per kg | 30,000,000 |
| Maize brand           | 25,000 per kg | 500 per kg | 12,500,000 |
| Total projected sales |               |            | 42,000,000 |

Promotion and advertising: the objectives to be achieved by my promotion and advertising strategies are:

To inform my target customers about the availability of my business products

To increase sales and profits

To create market for my products

To outcompete my business competitors

The above objectives are achieved through advertising and promotion tools such as offering samples and discounts, attractive packaging and branding, producing high quality products, putting up a sign post, giving out business cards and brochures on streets and in institutions among others.

Distribution strategy: the factory distributes products directly to customers who come to the retail outlet at our factory premises and to institutions that make direct orders while for customers who cant reach the business premises, my business products reaches them through wholesalers and retailers.

Projected marketing expenses: Marketing expenses incurred by the factory are as detailed below;

Projected marketing expenses per month/ year.

| Promotional method             | Period    | Quantity | Unit cost | Total cost for the month | Total for the year |
|--------------------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| Sign post                      | Per year  | 1        | 100,000   | 100,000                  | 100,000            |
| Business card                  | Per year  | 500      | 300       | 150,000                  | 150,000            |
| Brochures                      | Per year  | 500      | 500       | 250,000                  | 250,000            |
| Sales person                   | Per month | 1        | 50,000    | 100,000                  | 500,000            |
| Newspaper                      | Per month | 4        | 50,000    | 200,000                  | 800,000            |
| <b>Total marketing expense</b> |           |          |           | 800,000                  | 1,800,000          |

Prepared by:

Sign:

Name:

Title:

iii. ORGANIZATIONAL/ HUMAN RESOURCE/ ADMINISTRATIVE/ MANAGEMENT PLAN

This is the framework around which people, machines, equipment and other physical parts of the plan are put together to have a moving organization. It includes people working in the project, their tasks, qualifications fringe benefits and remuneration.

KADODI MAIZE MILLERS

P.O BOX 251, IGANGA

0783177885

ORGANISATIONAL PLAN

**Organizational structure.** On top of organizational frame work are the shareholders or business owners, followed by the board of directors, followed by the general manager below whom are the different department managers like the production manager, financial manager/ accountant and the sales manager.

**Human resource needs.** The business employs a General Manager, an account, a production manager, a marketing manager, a security person and some casual laborers.

**Job duties and responsibilities.** Casual laborers do manual work involving loading and off loading, cleaning the factory premises, preparing meals for workers etc and other duties as may be assigned. The security official ensures safety of factory property and premises, the accountant is in charge of book keeping system; production manager is in charge of production activities and quality management, while the general manager takes the overall co ordination of production activities both within and outside the factory.

**Skills and knowledge/ Qualifications:** the general manager is required to possess a minimum of a Bachelors Degree in Business management, the accountant should have a minimum of a Bachelors Degree in Marketing, the Production manager should have a minimum of a Bachelors Degree in Food science and technology, a minimum of Ordinary level Certificate of Education is a must for all casual workers but for security personnel in addition to that should have been passed successful from a credible military training school or security organization.

**Basic pay salary/ worker's remuneration.** The payment shall be as follows;

| POSITION                 | NUMBER | WAGE/ SALARY (SHS) | TOTAL AMOUNT (SHS) |
|--------------------------|--------|--------------------|--------------------|
| General manager          | 1      | 600,000            | 600,000            |
| Accountant               | 1      | 400,000            | 400,000            |
| Production manager       | 1      | 400,000            | 400,000            |
| Sales manager            | 1      | 400,000            | 400,000            |
| Casual labourer          | 6      | 100,000            | 600,000            |
| Watch man                | 1      | 60,000             | 60,000             |
| <b>Total labour cost</b> |        |                    | <b>2,460,000</b>   |



**Fringe benefits to be given to the workers.** In addition to the salary and wage structure to be given to the workers, all workers are entitled to transport allowance and lunch....

**Monitoring and evaluation of employees.** Monthly performance appraisal is carried out.

Summary of administrative expenses: these include communication expenses, transport expenses among others totaling up to Shs. 200,000 per month.

iv. Financial plan

(Covers the financial requirements of the business) it includes the fixed capital expenditure, start-up capital, working capital, financing, profitability of the business, break even analysis and the periodic cash flow statements of the business.

KIKKOKO POULTRY FARM

P.O BOX MASAKA

TEL: 0783177885

| FINANCIAL PLAN FOR EXPANSION OF KIKOOKO POULTRY FARM |                |                   |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| REQUIREMENTS                                         | AMOUNT (SHS)   | AMOUNT (SHS)      |
| Fixed capital                                        |                |                   |
| Acquisition of more land                             | 3,000,000      |                   |
| Construction of more buildings                       | 5,000,000      |                   |
| Purchase of a farm wheelbarrow                       | 200,000        |                   |
| Purchase of more drinkers                            | 300,000        |                   |
| Purchase of more feeding troughs                     | 500,000        |                   |
| Purchase of more egg trays                           | 500,000        |                   |
| Purchase of more water reservoirs                    | <u>500,000</u> |                   |
| Total                                                |                | <b>10,000,000</b> |
| Start up expenses                                    |                |                   |
| Extension of water to new sites                      | 400,000        |                   |
| Installation of electricity                          | 600,000        |                   |
| Installation of laying centres                       | <u>200,000</u> |                   |
| Total                                                |                | <b>1,200,000</b>  |
| Working capital and consumables                      |                |                   |
| Chicks                                               | 2,100,000      |                   |
| Poultry feeds                                        | 2,500,000      |                   |
| Labour                                               | 400,000        |                   |
| Water                                                | 1,000,000      |                   |
| Electricity                                          | 200,000        |                   |
| Interest on loan                                     | 2,000,000      |                   |
| Marketing expenses                                   | 200,000        |                   |
| Administrative expenses                              | 150,000        |                   |

|                           |              |                         |
|---------------------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| Transport expenses        | 250,000      |                         |
| Total                     |              | <b>8,800,000</b>        |
| TOTAL FUNDS REQUIRED      |              | <b>20,000,000</b>       |
|                           |              |                         |
| Financing of the business | Amount (shs) | <b>Cost implication</b> |
| Loan from Bank            | 14,000,000   | <b>% interest</b>       |
| Members contribution      | 6,000,000    | 1,600,000               |
| Sale of personal assets   | 2,000,000    |                         |
| TOTAL                     | 22,000,000   | <b>1,600,000</b>        |

- ❖ Expected sales: Shs. 43,000,000/=
- ❖ Profitability of the business: it expects a profit of shs. 6,000,000/=
- ❖ Break even scale of the business =  $\frac{\text{Fixed expenses}}{\text{Unit contribution}} \times 100$

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \text{Unit contribution} \\
 & = \frac{10,000,000}{(32,000,000 - 8,800,000)} \times 100
 \end{aligned}$$

- ❖ Periodic cash flows. Kikoko poultry farm expects the following inflows and outflows from January – June 2019. It can also cover a full year, 2 years, 10 years etc

## Business balance sheet.

| DETAILS                 | JAN           | FEB           | MAR           | APRIL         | MAY          | JUNE         |
|-------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
|                         | SHS<br>"000"  | SHS<br>"000"  | SHS<br>"000"  | SHS<br>"000"  | SHS<br>"000" | SHS<br>"000" |
| Balance B/F             | -             | 9,350         | 10,980        | 10,310        | 7,840        | 5,590        |
| <u>Add: cash inflow</u> |               |               |               |               |              |              |
| Cash sales              | -             |               | -             |               | -            | 4,000        |
| Loans                   | 20,000        |               | -             |               | -            | -            |
| Receipts from debtors   | -             |               | 1,000         |               | -            | -            |
| Own funds               | -             | 2,000         | -             |               | -            | -            |
| Trade credit            | 2,000         | -             | 1,000         |               | -            | -            |
| <b>Total inflow</b>     | <b>22,000</b> | <b>11,350</b> | <b>12,980</b> | <b>10,310</b> | <b>7,840</b> | <b>9,590</b> |
| <u>Less: outflows</u>   |               |               |               |               |              |              |
| Purchase of chicks      | 2,100         | -             | -             | -             | -            | -            |
| Poultry feeds           | 1,000         | -             | -             | -             | -            | 1,000        |
| Fixed assets            | 8,000         | -             | 500           | -             | -            | 200          |
| Labour                  | 100           | -             | -             | 100           | -            | -            |
| Loan principal Payment  | -             | -             | 2,000         | 2,000         | 2,000        | 2,000        |
| Interest on loan        | 200           | 200           | -             | -             | 200          | 200          |
| Utilities               | 1,200         | 120           | 120           | 120           | -            | 120          |
| Indirect costs          | 50            | 50            | 50            | 50            | 50           | 50           |
| <b>Total outflow</b>    | <b>12,650</b> | <b>370</b>    | <b>2,670</b>  | <b>2,470</b>  | <b>2,250</b> | <b>3570</b>  |
| Net cash position       | 9,350         | 10,980        | 10,310        | 7,840         | 5,590        | 6,020        |

## v. ACTION PLAN

| <p style="text-align: center;">INFLIX GENERAL TRADERS</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P.O BOX 34, MUBENDE</p> <p style="text-align: center;">TEL. 078659483</p> <p style="text-align: center;">ACTION PLAN for _____(week/ month/ year)</p> |            |                  |                    |                       |          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|----------|
| ACTIVITY                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | TIME FRAME | RESOURCES NEEDED | PERSON RESPONSIBLE | INDICATORS OF SUCCESS | COMMENTS |
| Formalizing the formation of the partnership                                                                                                                                                                                                   |            |                  |                    | Partnership deed      |          |
| Opening up a bank account                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |            |                  |                    | Bank account          |          |
| Carrying out preliminary survey of the product                                                                                                                                                                                                 |            |                  |                    |                       |          |
| Selection of business site/ rental                                                                                                                                                                                                             |            |                  |                    |                       |          |
| Construction of premises                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |            |                  |                    |                       |          |
| Acquisition of tools and equipment                                                                                                                                                                                                             |            |                  |                    |                       |          |
| Installation of equipment                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |            |                  |                    |                       |          |
| Recruitment of personal                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |            |                  |                    |                       |          |

|                            |  |  |             |                   |  |
|----------------------------|--|--|-------------|-------------------|--|
| Purchasing of stock        |  |  |             | stock             |  |
| Production trial           |  |  |             |                   |  |
| Publicity                  |  |  |             |                   |  |
| Commercial production      |  |  |             | Products for sale |  |
| Launching of the business. |  |  |             |                   |  |
| PREPARED BY                |  |  | APPROVED BY |                   |  |
| Sign:                      |  |  | Sign:       |                   |  |
| Name:                      |  |  | Name:       |                   |  |
| Tittle: OPERATIONS MANAGER |  |  | Tittle:     |                   |  |

#### OTHER SUPPORTING FILES IN THE BUSINESS PLAN.

##### vi. Budgets which include:

- Operational budget

(Summary of the income and expense projections of the business in a given period of time. It shows the expected sales, cost of sales, gross profit, general and administrative expenses and the net profit.

|                                                                                                                                                                                           |     |           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------|
| <p style="text-align: center;">UNIQUE LIQUID SOAP</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P.O BOX 275, KYOTERA.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OPERATIONAL BUDGET TO FINANCE EXPANSION</p> |     |           |
| Details                                                                                                                                                                                   | shs | Shs       |
| Projected sales revenue                                                                                                                                                                   |     | 7,000,000 |

|                              |           |           |
|------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| Less: expected cost of sales |           |           |
| - Labour/ wages              | 1,000,000 |           |
| - Raw materials              | 800,000   |           |
| - Packaging                  | 340,000   | 2,140,000 |
| Expected gross profit        |           | 4,860,000 |
| Less: operating expenses     |           |           |
| - Utilities                  | 300,000   |           |
| - Advertising                | 560,000   |           |
| - Insurance                  | 990,000   |           |
| - Salaries                   | 610,000   | 2,460,000 |
| Net profit                   |           | 2,400,000 |

- Ordinary/ general budget.

This includes only the fixed capital and working capital.

Example. You are planning to expand your poultry project. Prepare a budget for expansion of your poultry project given shs 15,000,000.

| REQUIREMENTS                | AMOUNT (SHS) | AMOUNT (SHS) |
|-----------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| <b>Fixed capital</b>        |              |              |
| Buildings and constructions | 4,000,000    |              |
| Feeding troughs             | 1,000,000    |              |
| Lifgthing system            | 1,500,000    |              |
| Farm tools                  | 1,000,000    |              |
| Water tank                  | 2,000,000    |              |
| Purchase of egg trays       | 600,000      |              |
|                             |              | Xxxxxxx      |
| <b>Working capital</b>      |              |              |

|                         |           |          |
|-------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Chicks                  | 2,000,000 |          |
| Poultry feeds           | 3,000,000 |          |
| Coffee husks            | 400,000   |          |
| Labour                  | 800,000   |          |
| Electricity             | 500,000   |          |
| Water                   | 150,000   |          |
| Marketing expenses      | 405,000   |          |
| Administrative expenses | 375,000   |          |
| Transport costs         | 170,000   | xxxxxxxx |
| TOTAL                   |           | xxxxxxxx |

- Functional budget

Capital expenditure budget. This covers expenses on fixed assets.

| REQUIREMENTS    | QTY | UNIT COST | AMOUNT (SHS) |
|-----------------|-----|-----------|--------------|
| Buildings       |     |           | 4,000,000    |
| Feeding troughs |     |           | 1,000,000    |
| Farm tools      |     |           | 1,500,000    |
| Water tank      |     |           | 1,000,000    |
| TOTAL           |     |           |              |

- ✓ Marketing budget

This covers only expenses attributed to the marketing department

|                     |
|---------------------|
| SAWUBA POULTRY FARM |
| P.O BOX 237, GULU   |
| TEL: 0789-272783    |



| MARKETING BUDGET FOR POULTRY PRODUCTS |              |                    |              |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------|--------------|
| Date: .....                           |              |                    |              |
| ITEM                                  | QUANTIT<br>Y | UNIT COST<br>(Shs) | AMOUNT (SHS) |
| Sales person's wages                  | 4            | 100,000            | 400,000      |
| Marketer's transport                  | 1            | 50,000             | 50,000       |
| Utilities like water and electricity  |              |                    | 780,000      |
| Signpost                              | 1            | 110,000            | 110,000      |
| Business cards                        | 500          | 100                | 50,000       |
| TOTAL                                 |              |                    | 1,390,000    |

Submitted by,

Signature:.....

Name of customer:.....

Approved by;.....

Signature:.....

Title: .....

✓ Pre-operating expenditure budget.

This shows cost estimates for expenditure incurred by the business before starts operations.  
E.g.

| Items                                 | Quantity | UNIT COST(SHS) | AMOUNT (SHS) |
|---------------------------------------|----------|----------------|--------------|
| Business license expenses             |          |                | 1,000,000    |
| Business name and registration        |          |                | 500,000      |
| Expenses on installation of machinery |          |                | 400,000      |
| Market research expenses              |          |                | 300,000      |
| Clearing land expenses                |          |                | 600,000      |
| Business consultation expenses        |          |                | 56,0000      |
|                                       |          |                | 34,0000      |

|                                |  |  |        |
|--------------------------------|--|--|--------|
| Technical preparation expenses |  |  | 75,000 |
| Expenses on recruiting workers |  |  |        |
|                                |  |  | XXXXX  |

✓ Utility budget

This covers expenditure on utilities. These may include water, electricity, telephone etc. never include items that are not utilities.

✓ Production budget

/ Production cost statement

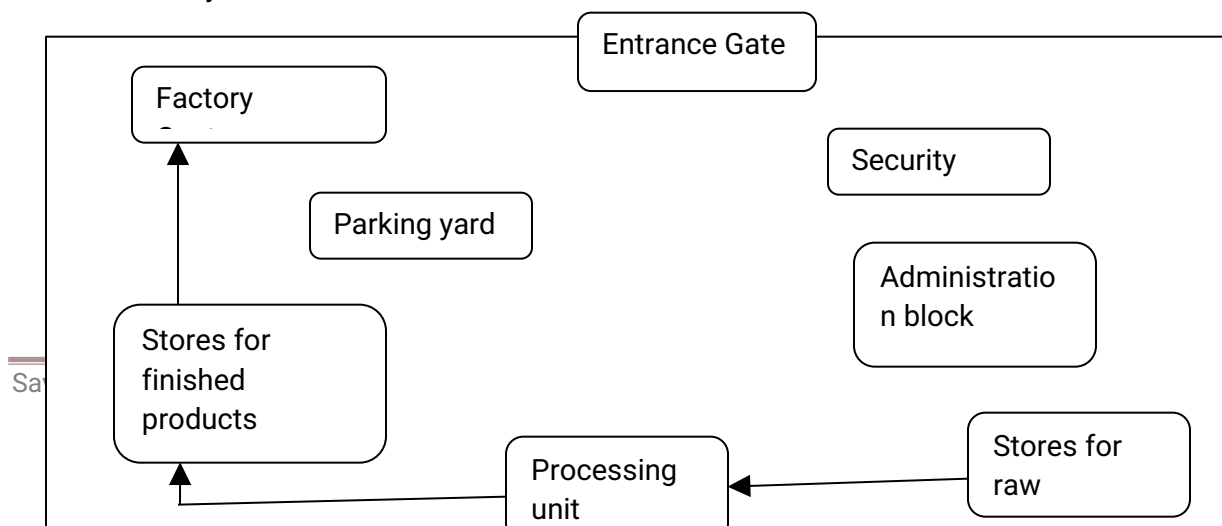
| <i>ITEMS</i>                  | <i>AMOUNT (SHS)</i>     | <i>AMOUNT (SHS)</i> |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| <b><i>PRIME COSTS (A)</i></b> |                         |                     |
| <i>Direct material cost</i>   | <i>100,000,000</i>      |                     |
| <i>Direct wages</i>           | <i>85,000,000</i>       |                     |
| <i>Direct expenses</i>        | <i><u>1,400,000</u></i> |                     |
| <i>Total prime cost</i>       |                         | <i>18,900,000</i>   |
| <b><i>WORK COSTS (B)</i></b>  |                         |                     |
| <i>Indirect wages</i>         | <i>24,200,000</i>       |                     |
| <i>Rent</i>                   | <i>4,600,000</i>        |                     |
| <i>Worker's salaries</i>      | <i>5,400,000</i>        |                     |
| <i>Store keeper's wages</i>   | <i>800,000</i>          |                     |
| <i>Power</i>                  | <i>10,100,000</i>       |                     |
| <i>Light</i>                  | <i>1,800,000</i>        |                     |
| <i>Machinery repairs</i>      | <i>5,700,000</i>        |                     |
| <i>Machinery depreciation</i> | <i>12,800,000</i>       |                     |
| <i>Total work costs</i>       |                         | <i>65,400,000</i>   |

|                                                  |                  |                           |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| <b><i>TOTAL MANUFACTURING COST (A+B)</i></b>     |                  | <b><i>252,300,000</i></b> |
| <b><i>ADMINISTRATION OVERHEADS (C)</i></b>       |                  |                           |
| <i>Auditor's fees</i>                            | <i>200,000</i>   |                           |
| <i>Postage and stationery</i>                    | <i>600,000</i>   |                           |
| <i>Office salaries and expenses</i>              | <i>2,900,000</i> |                           |
| <i>Total administration overheads</i>            |                  | <i>3,700,000</i>          |
| <b><i>SELLING AND DISTRIBUTION COSTS (D)</i></b> |                  |                           |
| <i>Salesmen's salaries</i>                       | <i>9,200,000</i> |                           |
| <i>Salesmen's allowances</i>                     | <i>2,800,000</i> |                           |
| <i>Driver's wages</i>                            | <i>4,000,000</i> |                           |
| <i>Total selling and distribution cost</i>       |                  | <i>16,000,000</i>         |
| <b><i>TOTAL OR GROSS COST (A+B+C+D)</i></b>      |                  | <b><i>272,000,000</i></b> |

✓ Working capital budget.

This covers expenses on working capital requirements such as labour, feeds, transport, marketing, administration, water, electricity etc

vii. Plant layout



viii. Profile of the business.

VANCE INSURANCE

P.O BOX 279, KYOTERA

Email: [vance@gmail.com](mailto:vance@gmail.com)

**PROFILE OF VANCE INSURANCE**

Business name and address: The business name is Vance Insurance and its address is P.o Box 279, Kyotera.

Line of business. The business deals in insurance services and policies.

Back ground of the business. The business has been in existence for 10 years. It started as a small business operating in temporary structures and kept on expanding due to the creativity of the partners and management.

Business nature of ownership: it owned as a Partnership

ix. Project proposal and work plan

Example: A Project proposal report seeking for fund for establishment of structures at african development farms -kyotera branch located on nkoni hill kakuuto sub-

county in kyotera district.

## ELEMENTS OF THE PROPOSAL

- i) project identification
- ii) brief description of the organization
- iii) brief description of the project
- iv) beneficiaries
- v) sustainability
- vi) work plan
- vii) project budget

A project proposal seeking for funds for the Construction of structures for Poultry and animal rearing.

### 1. PROJECT IDENTIFICATION.

- (a) Project title:
- (b) Name and address of the organization. African Development Farms- Kyotera branch.
- (c) Location of the proposed project. Nkoni hill, Kakuuto county Kyotera District Uganda.
- (d) Duration of the project. Four (4) months.
- (e) Amount of funds requested in Ug shs. 49,705,000/= OR US Dollars 16568.3/=

### 2. BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE ORGANIZATION

- i. Business name and address:.
- ii. Business vision: Having the leading poultry and livestock farms in Africa.
- iii. Business mission: To create sustainable development in Africa through innovative agriculture.

**Business target:**

- 1. To rear 50,000 chickens, 10,000 turkeys, 10,000 ducks, 100 goats, 100 sheep, 5000 rabbits.
- 2. To gather almost all fruit species on the farm to save the disappearing nutritious fruits.
- 3. To create employment opportunities for Community members and youths.
- 4. To improve nutrition in both animals and people through producing a variety of fruits.
- iv. Nature and type of business: Sole proprietorship and Agribusiness
- v. Uniqueness of the business: The farm has a collection of both wild and domestic fruits, insects and animals.
- vi. Products offered: Animals: Goats, Sheep, Rabbits, Milk, Fur, skins and Hides.  
Birds: Turkeys, Chicken, Ducks, Eggs
- vii. Customers offered: Kyotera community and consumers of poultry and livestock in Africa.
- viii. Date of formation: Started 2015
- ix. Sources of funding. Past savings and re-investment

### **3. BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE PROJECT**

- a) Problem statement: Construction of structures for Poultry and animal rearing.
- b) Purpose. To improve the housing facilities for farm poultry and animals.

- c) Immediate expected results. African Development Farms –Kyotera branch will be able to house a number of birds and animals which will also enable it create sustainable development in Africa through innovative agriculture.

#### 4. BENEFICIARIES.

- i. Housing facilities for poultry birds and livestock will be improved
- ii. More employment opportunities will be created for the community.
- iii. The farm will act as a center for eco tourism as its different fruits attract a variety of wild birds thus improving national and international tourism.
- iv. The farm will act as a research centre on fruits, poultry, insects and livestock.

#### 5. SUSTAINABILITY.

The organization will be able to continue funding its activities after the end of the project funding opportunity as its future sources of income will be past savings and re-investing profits.

#### 6. WORK PLAN

| ACTIVITY | REQUIRED INPUTS | TIME IN MONTHS |     |     |     | PERSONS | BUDGET COST | SOURCE OF |
|----------|-----------------|----------------|-----|-----|-----|---------|-------------|-----------|
|          |                 | SEP            | OCT | NOV | DEC |         |             |           |

|                                                          |                                                   | 2020 | 2020 | V<br>2020 | 2020 | IN<br>CHARGE         |            | FUND     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------|------|-----------|------|----------------------|------------|----------|
| Leveling and grading of site                             | Tractor<br>Six workers                            | *    | *    |           |      | Owner                | 2,400,000  | DONATION |
| Establishment of poultry and livestock facilities        | Cement, sand, stones, workers, building materials |      | *    | *         |      | Workers              | 20,320,000 | DONATION |
| Establishment of water source & reliable supply facility | Electricity, machines and equipment               |      |      | *         | *    | Owner<br>All workers | 3,260,000  | DONATION |
| Establishment of Staff quarters and toilet facility.     | Building materials                                |      |      |           | *    |                      | 4,050,000  | DONATION |
| Farm electrification                                     | Generator, water pump                             |      |      |           | •    |                      | 4,675,000  | DONATION |
| Farm truck                                               |                                                   |      |      |           |      |                      | 15,000,000 | DONATION |



## 7. PROJECT BUDGET

| ACTIVITY                                                          | ITEMS<br>REQUIRED   | QUANTITY   | UNIT COST<br>(SHS) | TOTAL COST (shs) |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|------------|--------------------|------------------|
| Leveling and<br>grading of site                                   | Grader              | 1          | 1,500,000          | 1,500,000        |
|                                                                   | Fuel                | 200 litres | 2,500              | 500,000          |
|                                                                   | Workers             | 2          | 200,000            | 400,000          |
| Establishment<br>of poultry and<br>livestock<br>facilities        | Bricks              | 50,000     | 100                | 5,000,000        |
|                                                                   | Sand                | 6 trips    | 120,000            | 720,000          |
|                                                                   | Stones              | 5trips     | 200,000            | 1,000,000        |
|                                                                   | Workers             | 5          | 300,000            | 1,500,000        |
|                                                                   | Iron sheets         | 200        | 24,000             | 4,800,000        |
|                                                                   | Timber              | 50         | 7,000              | 350,000          |
|                                                                   | Poles               | 50         | 15,000             | 750,000          |
|                                                                   | Cement              | 120 bags   | 25,000             | 3,000,000        |
|                                                                   | Vehicle             | 1          | 400,000            | 400,000          |
|                                                                   | Nails               | 100 kgs    | 3000               | 300,000          |
|                                                                   | Wirenets<br>(ft4X8) | 100        | 25000              | 2,500,000        |
|                                                                   |                     |            |                    |                  |
| Establishment<br>of water source<br>& reliable<br>supply facility | sand                | 2 trips    | 120,000            | 240,000          |
|                                                                   | cement              | 4 bags     | 25,000             | 100,000          |
|                                                                   | Bull dozer          | 1          | 800,000            | 800,000          |
|                                                                   | Water pump          | 1          | 400,000            | 400,000          |
|                                                                   | Water tanks         | 2          | 800,000            | 1,600,000        |

|                                                      |                    |         |            |                                |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------|------------|--------------------------------|
|                                                      | Water Pipes        | 4       | 30,000     | 120,000                        |
| Establishment of Staff quarters and toilet facility. | Iron sheets        | 30      | 24,000     | 720,000                        |
|                                                      | workers            | 2       | 100,000    | 200,000                        |
|                                                      | stones             | 1 trip  | 200,000    | 200,000                        |
|                                                      | Timber             | 20      | 7,000      | 140,000                        |
|                                                      | bricks             | 20,000  | 100        | 2,000,000                      |
|                                                      | Nails              | 30 kgs  | 3,000      | 90,000                         |
|                                                      | Cement             | 20 bags | 25,000     | 500,000                        |
|                                                      | Doors              | 5       | 40,000     | 200,000                        |
| Farm electrification                                 | Generator          | 1       | 3,000,000  | 3,000,000                      |
|                                                      | Power saving bulbs | 15      | 5,000      | 75,000                         |
|                                                      | Solar panel        | 2       | 800,000    | 1,600,000                      |
| Farm truck                                           | Pick up            | 1       | 10,000,000 | 15,0000,000                    |
| GRAND TOTAL                                          |                    |         |            | <b>= Shs.<br/>49,705,000/=</b> |
| Expected source of funds                             |                    |         |            |                                |
| Business own savings                                 |                    |         |            | 5,000,000                      |
| Business profits to be reinvested                    |                    |         |            | 7,450,000                      |
| Donations                                            |                    |         |            |                                |

Attached are banking details.

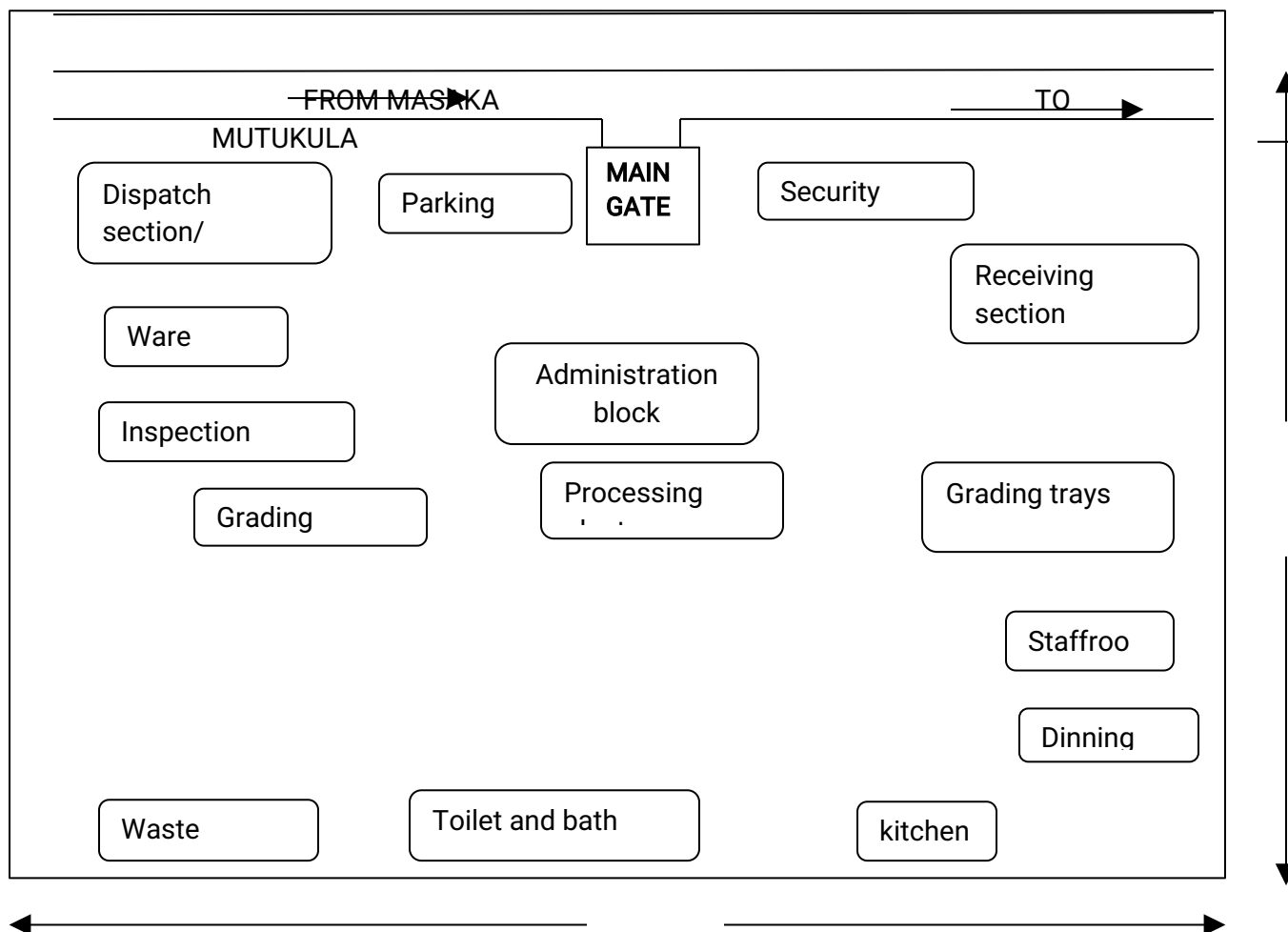
BANK ACCOUNT NUMBER: **32014506973**

BANK ENTITY: **CENTENARY BANK**

BANK ACCOUNT NAME: xxxxxxxxjjjions

### x. Site plan

This includes the components of plant lay out however there is no need to show production process flow and arrangement of machinery using arrows in a site plan. Instead it is only the production block which is named.



250M

**14. CERTIFICATES**

- iv. Certificate of incorporation.
- v. Certificate of recognition

*UGA FUELS  
P.O BOX 234, KYOTERA  
TEL 0759748844*

***CERTIFICATE OF RECOGNITION******NO. 034****DATE: .....*

*This certificate of recognition is awarded to ..... for having  
excelled in ..... while at the company. He /she has been head/  
member of ..... Department/ section.*

*Signed by .....**Signed by .....**Name: .....**Name:.....**Title .....**Title:.....*

*"To become the hub of excellent performance"*

vi. Share certificate.

This is issued to shareholders to confirm ownership of shares in a company.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |              |               |          |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|---------------|----------|----|
| <p>KAWOOMA RESTAURANT</p> <p>P.O BOX 123, KIWATULE</p> <p>TEL: 078945673</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |              |               |          |    |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; padding: 5px 20px; margin: 10px auto; width: 80%;">SHARE</div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |              |               |          |    |
| <p>Registered capital of shs ..... divided into ..... Shares of shs 500 each.</p> <p>Certificate No: .....</p> <p>This is to certify that: ..... is a registered holder of .....ordinary shares numbered from ____ to ____ inclusive of Ug.shs. 500/= each fully paid in the above named company subject to the memorandum and articles of association there of.</p> |              |               |          |    |
| Date                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Transfer no. | No. of shares | Numbered |    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |              |               | From     | To |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |              |               |          |    |
| <p>Note: No transfer can be registered unless accompanied by this certificate.</p> <p>Given under the common seal of the company this .....day of .....20.....</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                   |              |               |          |    |

For and on behalf of Kawooma Restaurant.

---

Chairman Board of Directors

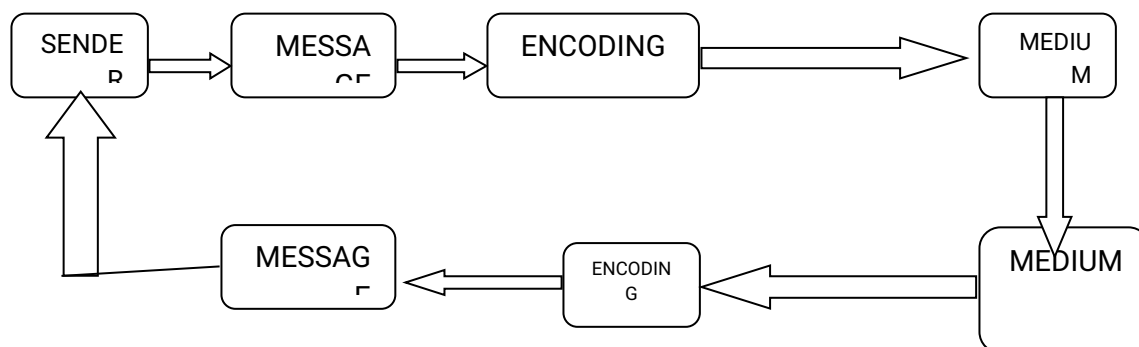
---

Company Secretary

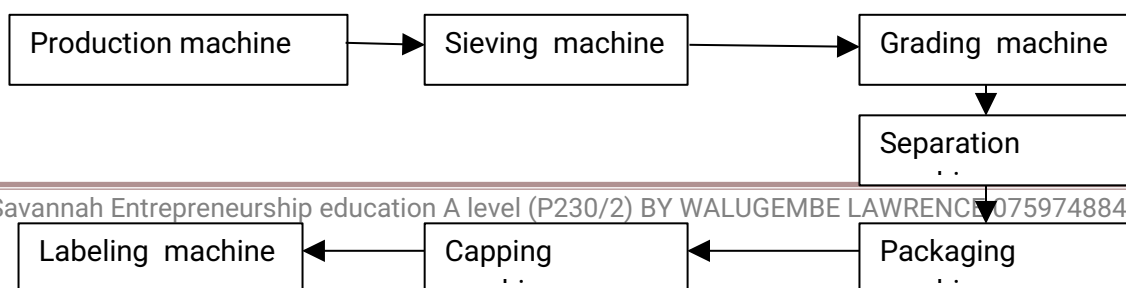
## 15. CHARTS

### vii. Communication chart

This shows the steps followed to convey a message between different parties.

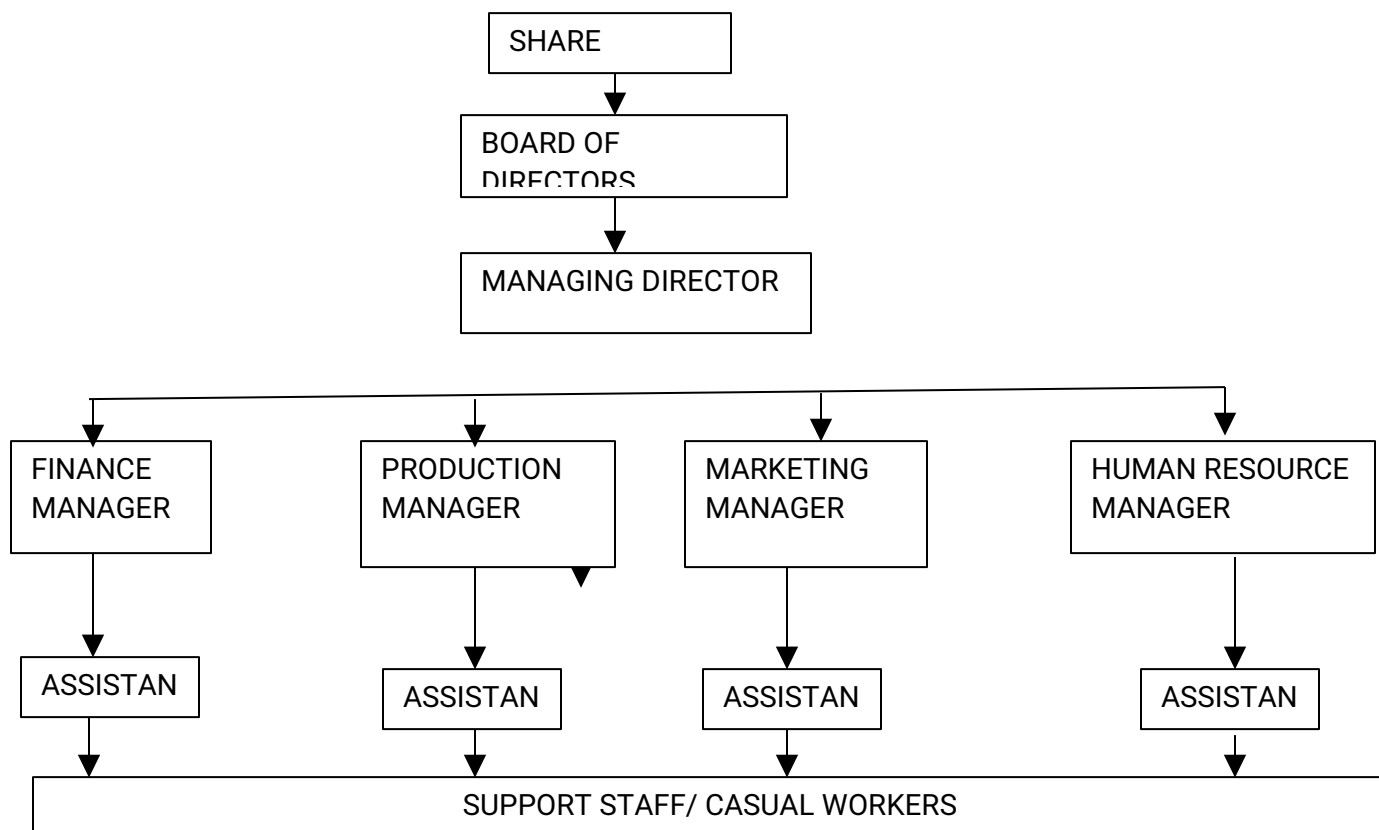


### viii. Machinery layout



ix. Organizational chart

This shows the hierarchy of authority within an organisation. It shows the superiors and subordinates within an organisation showing clearly who reports to another.



x. Process flow chart

This shows the procedure followed to produce goods. It shows the stages followed to produce a given product.



## 16. CORRESPONDENCE/ COMMUNICATION

xix. Agenda

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p style="text-align: center;">BUWOOMA DELICIOUS JUICE</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P.O BOX 234, KYOTERA</p> <p style="text-align: center;">TEL: 0759748844</p> <p>An agenda for the meeting scheduled for Monday 2<sup>nd</sup> August, 2019.</p> <p>1) Recording apologies</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|



- 2) Opening prayer
- 3) Communication from the Chairperson
- 4) Reading previous minutes
- 5) Matters arising from 3 and 4
- 6) Treasurer's report
- 7) Date for the next meeting
- 8) Closing prayer

Signed .....

KAKUU BEDBUG

SECRETARY

xx. Apology .This is written by someone who performed what is not good. It asks for pardon and forgiveness. The body should include the evil you committed and a phrase promising never to do it again.

xxi. Application letters

This is written by the job applicant seeking for employment in a given enterprise. Its body should contain the quote of the advert, age, nationality, academic background, gender and the post applied for and experience.

Qn. You have completed studies and thus looking for employment before you finally venture into self employment.

BYENDA INTESTINES

P.O BOX 234, KAGADI

TEL: 0783177885

Our Ref: BI/DFI/23/ 07/2019

TO: THE HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER

DEVELOP FARMERS INITIATIVE

Dear Sir,

**RE: APPLICATION FOR THE POST OF FINANCIAL MANAGER.**

I have just seen the advertisement for the above post in the New Vision of Tuesday 10<sup>th</sup> July 2019 and I wish to humbly submit in my application for the above post.

I am a male Ugandan aged 24 ready to work under minimum supervision to the expectations of the company in the port folio of accountant. I hold a Bachelors Degree in Commerce specializing in Accounting.

I have enclosed copies of my curriculum vitae, academic documents and recommendation letters from referees. I am looking forward to seeing your positive response.

Your faith fully

.....

BYENDA INTESTINES

xxii. Appointment letter

This shows the terms and conditions under which someone has been employed. The body contains five major parts / elements i.e. salary, job title, duties in responsibilities, when to start working, immediate supervisor, appointing authority, duty station minute number and terms of employment.

LUWEERO CONSTRUCTIONS LIMITED

P.O BOX 234, LUWERO

TEL: 0774884455

Date: 23/07/2019

Our Ref: LCL/JK/23/7/2019

Your Ref: .....

TO MADAM JOAN KIRABO

P.O BOX 2435

KAMPALA

Dear Sir,

RE: APPOINTMENT AS AN ACCOUNTANT

Subsequent to your successful interview, the Board of Directors of Luwero Constructions Limited has under Minute No 13 (114/2019) recruited you as an Accountant occupying Room No. 5 as your duty station.

Your duties shall be;

- Supervising daily cash receipts and payments
- Preparing books of accounts
- Preparing workers payroll
- Any other financial related matter

You are reporting to the General Manager and will give you further guidance in your duties. The following are terms and conditions of your service.

Your basic monthly salary shall be shs. 1,200,000/=. You are entitled to a car for full

time use. The company shall rent for your a house at a cost shs 550,000 per month and also meet your domestic electricity, telephone and water bills.

Your appointment letter is effective 1<sup>st</sup> August 2019.

Yours faithfully,

.....

MATU EARS

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER

For: LUWERO CINSTRUCTIONS LIMITED

C.C File

C.C Head of finance department

Appreciation letter. This is written in recognition of the good service performed for you. The body should contain the good things done for you for which you are appreciating. For example it may be the business appreciating workers.

#### xxiii. BUSINESS LETTER

This is the same as a formal letter discussed in letter writing. It is used to send information from the business organization to an individual or another business organization on specific areas of interest between the business and the addressee. It should contain the following;

Name and address of the business

Date of writing the letter

Reference – for filing purposes.

Inside address/ receivers address/ addressees address.

Salutation. This is the greeting to commence a letter. E.g. Dear Sir/ Madam

Subject heading/ line. This gives a brief indication of the content in the letter. It must be in capital letters (bold print) and underlined. It must be below salutation.

Body of the letter. This takes more marks and it changes from one letter to

another.

Complementary clause. This is the general closing of the letter.

Signature, name and title of the sender

Enclosure. This is used if some contents were enclosed in the letter. The abbreviation "Enc" is used.

Carbon Copy/ copies circulated (C.C): This indicates the authority which has received a similar copy of the letter.

#### xxiv. Circular

This is used to give the same information to different persons. One document is prepared and copies are produced to circulate it to various parties.

Qn: You are operating a Coffee Hulling Factory. The contracts of your General Manager, quality controller and the secretary have expired. Through internal sourcing you have identified suitable replacement for the quality controller and secretary. You are making preparations to communicate the changes to your employees and to recruit a new general manager. Write a circular inviting all heads of department to an urgent meeting.

#### MUJJE COFFEE HULLING FACTORY

P.O BOX 123, MAKINDWE

[TEL:0772457314](tel:0772457314)

Date 23th July, 2019

Our Ref: MCHF/AE/23/07/2019

Your ref:

To: All Employees

Mukisa Coffee Hulling Factory.

RE: INVITATION TO AN URGENT MEETING.

You are hereby invited to attend an urgent meeting to be informed of the changes in our human resource structure and to lay grounds to recruit the general manager for the factory. The meeting is to take place on the 20<sup>th</sup> July 2019 in the factory conference Hall at 9:00am

Keep time. Hoping to see you then.

Yours faithfully

.....

LULIMI JOHN

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER

C.C Board of Directors

C.C Heads of Department

C.C Shareholders

C.C Employees

xxv. Complaining letters .Some times in business you may not be given the appropriate quality of goods order for or there may be anything which is contrary to the business expectations. This may call for a letter to complain about the same. The body is blended with words complaining but not quarreling.

xxvi. Credit status inquiry

xxvii. Invitation letters

You run a rapidly growing maize milling factory operating in a small and congested area. You would like to shift to a new location. Write a letter inviting environmental officials to advise you on the construction of the proposed factory.

BEST MAIZE FLOUR  
P.O BOX 334, MASAKA  
TEL: 0759748844

Date: 24<sup>th</sup> July, 2019

Our Ref: BMF/DEO/24/07/2019

Your Ref: .....

THE ENVIRONMENTAL OFFICIALS  
MASAKA DISTRICT

THROUGH: THE DISTRICT ENVIRONMENT OFFICER  
MASAKA DISTRICT

Dear Sir,

**RE: ADVICE ON CONSTRUCTION OF MAIZE MILLING FACTORY.**

I humbly forward in my request to your esteemed office (s) seeking advice about the construction of the new factory premises for the above business in Kimanya. The essence of this letter is to invite you to inspect the chosen site and comment whether it is suitable for such business type depending on the environmental standards.

Awaiting for your positive response

Yours faithfully

.....

ODOKO JOHNSON

OPERATING OFFICER

C.C District Environment

C.C Municipal Clerk

C.C Chairman L.C 1 Kimanya B

C.C All partners

Enc Site plan.

## Sample 2

BUWOOMA DELICIOUS JUICE

P.O BOX 234, KYOTERA

TEL: 0759748844

Date 13th August, 2019

Our Ref: MCHF/AE/23/07/2019

Your ref:

To: All Employees

Buwooma Delicious Juice.

RE: **INVITATION TO AN URGENT MEETING.**

You are hereby invited to attend an urgent meeting to be informed of the changes in our human resource structure and to lay grounds to recruit the general manager for the factory. The meeting is to take place on the 20<sup>th</sup>



August 2019 in the factory conference Hall at 9:00am

Keep time. Hoping to see you then.

Yours faithfully,

.....

LULIMI JOHN

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER

C.C Board of Directors

C.C Heads of Department

C.C Shareholders

C.C Employees

xxviii. Memo

xxix. Minutes

xxx. Notice

xxxi. Notice for dismissal of a worker to the general public

xxxii. Recommendation letter.

This acts as basis for employment of the person recommended. The person recommending should include positive words in the body concerning the workers work profile. The employers will base on this record to consider the employee for recruitment or not.

Qn: You are the personnel manager of Chakichi Metal Works. Write a recommendation letter to Njala Johnson an engineer seeking to join Quality Steel Rolling Limited

CHAKICHI METAL WORKS

P.O BOX 713, ARUA

TEL: 0783177885

Date: 23/7/2019

Our ref: CMW/QSRL/23/7/2019

Your ref: .....

The Human Resource Manager

Quality Steel Rolling Limited.

P.O BOX 7643, KAMPALA

Dear Sir,

**RE: RECOMMENDATION OF MR NJALA JOHNSON FOR A POST OF MECHANICAL ENGINEER**

I struggle recommend without any reservation Mr Njala Johnson for a post of Mechanical Engineer. I have worked with this gentleman for 15 years and is a very careful, hardworking and responsible worker. His change for work place is not connected to behavior but it is change of environment of work.

Any assistance rendered to him is highly appreciated.

Your faithfully,

.....

BUGERE MARVIN  
PERSONNEL MANAGER

xxxiii.

xxxiv. Report.

A report contains conclusions and recommendations after an investigation. A report must be accurate, clear, complete, concise and logically arranged.

Example: you are engaged in marketing of bakery products as a manager. The company has experienced declining sales. Write a report on the market research you have just carried out.

A report to the managing director concerning market research carried out

DIDIDADADA BAKERY  
P.O BOX 333, KAMPLA  
TEL 0759748844

Date: 24<sup>th</sup> 07 2019

THE MANAGING DIRECTOR  
DIDIDADADA BAKERY  
P.O BOX 333, KAMPALA

Dear Sir

## **REPORT ON THE MARKET RESEARCH CARRIED OUT ABOUT DIDIDADADA PRODUCTS**

### **Introduction.**

On the 20<sup>th</sup> of July 2019, the Managing Director of Dididadada Bakery instructed the marketing manager to carry out market research to establish the causes of declining sales in Didadadada bakery.

**Procedure/ methods:** the marketing manager distributed questionnaires to the customers to the customers in order to obtain market information. The marketing manager also moved to the field and observed the way agents and sales persons deal with the selling process. He also had oral interviews with the middlemen in the distribution channel and then customers.

**Findings.** It was discovered that the distribution trucks just used to stop in the big towns ignoring the semi urban and rural areas, two of the sales persons had skin rashes and one was severely coughing and unattractive to look at by customers, the 1kg loaf of bread was highly priced. In some areas the sliced breads would reach when they have broken to powder form.

The sales persons were very unsocial when dealing with customers.

**Conclusion.** The causes of declining sales in Dididadada bakery is as a result of inadequate production distribution, unattractive and unskilled sales persons, poor relationship between sellers and customers, high product prices and chice of wrong modes of delivery to customers.

**Recommendations:** there is need for using more distribution trucks to enable all the customers access the product, recruitment of sales persons in good health, regulating the price of the products, choice of a better method of delivery of the product and increasing customer care by the sales persons.

Prepared by,

.....

KIKU BEDBUG

MARKETING MANAGER

xxxv. Termination letter

xxxvi. Warning letters

The words used in the body of a warning letter must be strong enough to enable the culprit change behavior for the success of the business.

Qn. You have been appointed the medical officer in charge of GOOD HEALTH CLINIC in Gulu. Write a letter to Mrs Odongo PETER the cashier whose performance is below the minimum acceptable standards.

xxxvii.

GOOD HEALTH CLINIC

P.O BOX 456, GULU

TEL: 0759748844

23/ 01/2019

Our ref: GHC/OP/23/01/2019

Your ref:

To MRS ODONGO PETER

Dear Cashier;

**RE: WARNING LETTER**

I write to inform you that the management is not satisfied with the way you perform your duties.

You are therefore warned to improve your performance and create change in your attitude towards otherwise we shall be forced to do away with you.

Yours sincerely,

.....

MATU JOAN

MEDICAL SUPERITENDANT

## **17. DOCUMENTS USED IN A WORK PLACE**

xviii. Arrival book

This records the time of arrival and departure for employees.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                  |                 |                 |                       |               |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------------|---------------|---------|
| <p>KIKO POULTRY</p> <p>P.O BOX 23, WAKISO</p> <p>TEL: 0784987543</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto; width: 150px;">ARRIVAL BOOK</div> |                  |                 |                 |                       |               |         |
| DATE                                                                                                                                                                                                | EMPLOYEE<br>NAME | EMPLOYEE<br>NO. | ARRIVAL<br>TIME | DEPARTU<br>RE<br>TIME | SIGNATU<br>RE | REMARKS |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                  |                 |                 |                       |               |         |

SUPERVISOR'S SIGNATURE:.....

DATE:.....

xix. Assets register.

This records all fixed assets owned by the business.

KIKO POULTRY  
P.O BOX 23, WAKISO  
TEL: 0784987543

|                    |
|--------------------|
| ASSETS<br>REGISTER |
|--------------------|

| ITEM          | ACQUISTION<br>DATE | QT<br>Y | UNIT VALUE | AMOUNT<br>VALUE | DEPRECIATI<br>ON VALUE | BOOK<br>VALUE |
|---------------|--------------------|---------|------------|-----------------|------------------------|---------------|
| Motor vehicle | 7.7.2019           | 2       | 30,000,000 | 60,000,000      | 4,000,000              | 56,000,000    |
| Buildings     | 5.11.2018          | 3       |            | 13,000,000      |                        | 13,000,000    |
| Land          | 01.01.2016         |         |            | 9,000,000       |                        | 9,000,000     |
| furniture     | 6.4.2017           |         |            | 23,000,000      |                        | 23,000,000    |
| Total         |                    |         |            |                 |                        | XXXXXX        |

Prepared by : .....

KALUUSU J.K

COMPANY MANAGER

xx. Cash record book.

This records cash receipts and cash payments.



KIKO POULTRY

P.O BOX 23, WAKISO

TEL: 0784987543

CASH RECORD BOOK

FOR THE MONTH OF \_\_\_\_\_ 20\_\_\_\_\_

Dr.

Cr.

| DATE | DETAILS | FOLIO | AMOUNT (SHS) | DATE | DETAILS | FOLIO | AMOUNT |
|------|---------|-------|--------------|------|---------|-------|--------|
|      |         |       |              |      |         |       |        |

## xxi. Cheque payment voucher

This is used to make payments using cheques. Example; You are operating a petro station. Design a cheque payment voucher to be used when making cheque payments.

UGA FUELS

P.O BOX 9823, WAKISO

TEL: 0784987543

CHEQUE PAYMENT  
VOUCHER

Cheque payment voucher No: .....

Date: .....

Payee' name: .....

Dr.

Cr.

|             |        |
|-------------|--------|
| PARTICULARS | AMOUNT |
| TOTAL       |        |

Prepared by ..... DATE .....

Checked by ..... DATE .....

Authorized by ..... Date: .....

Received by ..... Date: .....

xxii. Daily time report

This shows how long employees were on jobs.

KIKOKO POULTRY

P.O BOX 23, WAKISO

TEL: 0784987543

DAILY TIME REPORT

Report Number: ..... Date: .....

Nature of work: .....

| JOB NO. | TIME ON |             | TIME OFF |         | TIME WORKED |         |
|---------|---------|-------------|----------|---------|-------------|---------|
|         | Hours   | Minute<br>s | Hours    | Minutes | Hours       | Minutes |
|         |         |             |          |         |             |         |

Signed .....

FOREMAN/SUPERVISER

## xxiii. Daily time sheet

This is used to monitor workers performance on a given job to establish the hours worked and the remuneration.

| KIKOKO POULTRY                                                                                    |                          |      |                  |                     |                   |              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|------|------------------|---------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| P.O BOX 23, WAKISO                                                                                |                          |      |                  |                     |                   |              |
| TEL: 0784987543                                                                                   |                          |      |                  |                     |                   |              |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">DAILY TIME SHEET</div> |                          |      |                  |                     |                   |              |
| Workers Number: .....                                                                             |                          |      |                  |                     | Date: .....       |              |
| Worker's name : .....                                                                             |                          |      |                  |                     | Department: ..... |              |
| WORK<br>ORDER<br>NO.                                                                              | DETAILLS OF<br>WORK DONE | TIME | TOTAL<br>HOURS   | RATE (UGX)          | AMOUNT            |              |
|                                                                                                   |                          |      |                  |                     |                   |              |
|                                                                                                   |                          | FROM | TO               | ORDINARY            | Over<br>time      | ordinar<br>y |
|                                                                                                   |                          |      |                  |                     |                   |              |
|                                                                                                   | Workman<br>.....         |      | Foreman<br>..... | Supervisor<br>..... |                   |              |

Signed .....

GENARAL MANAGER

## xxiv. Debtor payment voucher

## xxv. Evaluation worksheet.

This is used to monitor the progress of the business.

|                                                                                                                                  |                    |         |                           |             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------|---------------------------|-------------|
| <b>KEKO FURNITURE</b><br><b>P.O BOX 237, KAMPALA</b><br><b>TEL: 0784987543</b>                                                   |                    |         |                           |             |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;"> <b>EVALUATION<br/>WORKSHEET</b> </div> |                    |         |                           |             |
| Objectives to be accomplished                                                                                                    | Information needed | sources | Techniques/methods to use | instruments |
|                                                                                                                                  |                    |         |                           |             |

Signed .....

PROJECT MANAGER

## xxvi. Identity card

These are provided to employees such that they can easily be identified as employees of the business or as part of the business.

|                                                                                                               |                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 100px; height: 60px; margin: 0 auto; border-radius: 10px;"></div> | <b>KALIBU RESTAURANT</b><br><b>P.O BOX 234, MASAKA</b><br><b>STAFF IDENTITY CARD</b> |
| <p>Pass port photo:</p> <p>Employee name: .....      Designation: .....</p>                                   |                                                                                      |

|                                      |                          |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Issue date: .....                    | Expiry date: .....       |
| Issuing authority: .....             | Holders signature: ..... |
| If found return to the above address |                          |

xxvii. Job cost sheet.

This is used when costing jobs in terms of money. Example; You are operating a construction firm which operates on contract basis. Design a job cost sheet for usage in the construction department.

|                                                                                                                   |            |     |                 |      |       |                             |                 |      |      |       |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|-----|-----------------|------|-------|-----------------------------|-----------------|------|------|-------|--------|
| DET CONSTRUCTION COMPANY                                                                                          |            |     |                 |      |       |                             |                 |      |      |       |        |
| P.O BOX 23, WAKISO                                                                                                |            |     |                 |      |       |                             |                 |      |      |       |        |
| TEL: 0784987543                                                                                                   |            |     |                 |      |       |                             |                 |      |      |       |        |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block; margin-top: 10px;">JOB COST SHEET</div> |            |     |                 |      |       |                             |                 |      |      |       |        |
| Name of the client : .....                                                                                        |            |     |                 |      |       | Date of commencement: ..... |                 |      |      |       |        |
| Job no: .....                                                                                                     |            |     |                 |      |       | Date of completion: .....   |                 |      |      |       |        |
| Materials                                                                                                         |            |     |                 |      |       |                             |                 |      |      |       |        |
| Date                                                                                                              | Ref<br>no. | Qty | Amount<br>(shs) | Date | Dept. | Hours<br>worked             | Amount<br>(shs) | Date | dept | hours | amount |
|                                                                                                                   |            |     |                 |      |       |                             |                 |      |      |       |        |
| Total                                                                                                             |            |     | X               |      |       |                             | T               |      |      |       |        |

Signed .....

## COSTING MANAGER

## xxviii. Pay roll

This is a sheet including all the employees names and their respective salaries. It is normally prepared covering a period of 1 month for employees salaries of that particular month.

## DET CONSTRUCTION COMPANY

P.O BOX 23, WAKISO

TEL: 0784987543

EMPLOYEES  
PAYROLL

| Employee<br>e name | Employee<br>e no. | Basic<br>pay | Allowances  |               | Gross<br>pay | Deductions |              | Net pay. |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|--------------|------------|--------------|----------|
|                    |                   |              | housin<br>g | transpor<br>t |              | taxes      | Advance<br>s |          |
|                    |                   |              |             |               |              |            |              |          |

|         |    |           |        |        |           |        |         |          |
|---------|----|-----------|--------|--------|-----------|--------|---------|----------|
| Kabaata | 01 | 400,000   | 40,000 | 30,000 | 470,000   | 60,000 | -       | 410,000  |
| Lukoko  | 02 | 500,000   | 60,000 | 40,000 | 600,000   | 30,000 | 50,000  | 520,000  |
| Kokoko  | 03 | 170,000   | -      | -      | 170,000   | -      | 70,000  | 100,000  |
| Total   |    | 1,070,000 | 10,000 | 70,000 | 1,240,000 | 90,000 | 120,000 | 1030,000 |

Prepared by .....

MAGANJO

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER

#### xxix. Pay slip

This is an extract of the payroll indicating payments to an individual employee.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                  |         |                  |       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|------------------|-------|
| <b>JOHNPAL METAL WORKS</b><br>P.O BOX 119, KYOTERA<br>TEL.<br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; margin: 5px auto; width: 100px;"> <b>PAY SLIP</b> </div> |         |                  |       |
| Name ..... period .....                                                                                                                                                                          |         |                  |       |
| Department ..... Tittle .....                                                                                                                                                                    |         |                  |       |
| Bank code and name .....                                                                                                                                                                         |         |                  |       |
| Basic pay ..... Gros pay .....                                                                                                                                                                   |         |                  |       |
| P.A.Y.E                                                                                                                                                                                          | N.S.S.F | Total deductions |       |
| Net pay                                                                                                                                                                                          |         |                  |       |
| .....                                                                                                                                                                                            | .....   | .....            | ..... |
| Prepared by ..... Date .....                                                                                                                                                                     |         |                  |       |

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Name ..... | Position. .... |
|------------|----------------|

xxx. Payment voucher.

This is used when paying salaries and allowances of workers. It used when making payments to an individual.

|                                                                                                                           |             |                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| DET CONSTRUCTION COMPANY                                                                                                  |             |                    |
| P.O BOX 23, WAKISO                                                                                                        |             |                    |
| TEL: 0784987543                                                                                                           |             |                    |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">           PAYMENT<br/>VPOUCHER         </div> |             |                    |
| Payment voucher No. ....                                                                                                  |             | Date. ....         |
| .....                                                                                                                     |             |                    |
| NO.                                                                                                                       | PARTICULARS | AMOUNT (SHS)       |
|                                                                                                                           |             |                    |
|                                                                                                                           | TOTAL       |                    |
| Amount in words: .....                                                                                                    |             |                    |
| Prepared by .....                                                                                                         |             | Checked by: .....  |
| Authorized by: .....                                                                                                      |             | Received by: ..... |

xxxi. Petty cash voucher

This is used when paying for small expenses. It is written by the petty cashier whenever expenditure is to be made from the petty cash. Example. You are operating a restaurant in your home town. Design a petty cash voucher you use to pay for small expenses.



## DELICIOUS FOODS RESTAURANT

P.O BOX 23, WAKISO

TEL: 0784987543

|                       |
|-----------------------|
| PETTY CASH<br>VOUCHER |
|-----------------------|

Petty cash voucher No. ....

Date.

Dr to ..... A/C .....

| PARTICULARS | AMOUNT (SHS) |
|-------------|--------------|
|             |              |
| TOTAL       |              |

Amount in words: .....

Prepared by .....

Checked by: .....

Authorized by: .....

Received by: .....

## xxxii. Roster.

This shows the personnel in-charge of the activity and the time within which the activity is to be done.

| DAY       | NAME OF WORKER | TIME | DESCRIPTION OF WORK |
|-----------|----------------|------|---------------------|
| Monday    |                |      |                     |
| Tuesday   |                |      |                     |
| Wednesday |                |      |                     |
| Thursday  |                |      |                     |

|          |  |  |  |
|----------|--|--|--|
| Friday   |  |  |  |
| Saturday |  |  |  |
| Sunday   |  |  |  |

## xxxiii. Stock card

This is used to record stock received and issued out of the store. It is where information regarding the stock of items kept in the store are written.

## DET CONSTRUCTION COMPANY

P.O BOX 23, WAKISO

TEL: 0784987543

## STOCK CARD

Name of item : .....

Items no.: .....

Maximum stock level: .....

Re- order level (mm): .....

| Materials |     |          |                 | Issues |          |                 | Balance |        | Issued to | Authorize<br>d by |
|-----------|-----|----------|-----------------|--------|----------|-----------------|---------|--------|-----------|-------------------|
| Date      | Qty | RAT<br>E | Amount<br>(shs) | Qty    | Rat<br>e | Amount<br>(shs) | Qty     | Amount |           |                   |
|           |     |          |                 |        |          |                 |         |        |           |                   |

Comments/ Remarks .....

Methods used in issuing .....

Signed .....

Stores manager.

## xxxiv. Visitors book/ reception register.

This is a book where visitors register on arrival to the business premises. It is kept at the reception i.e. the place where visitors are first attended to.

KEKO FURNITURE

P.O BOX 237, KAMPALA

TEL: 0784987543

RECEPTION  
REGISTER

| DATE | VISITOR'S NAME | ADDRESS | TELEPHONE NO. | REASON | ARRIVAL TIME | SIGNATURE | COMMENTS/REMARKS |
|------|----------------|---------|---------------|--------|--------------|-----------|------------------|
|      |                |         |               |        |              |           |                  |

Signed .....

RECEPTIONIST

## 18. DOCUMENTS USED IN TRADE

xxix. Bill of exchange.

This is a written order addressed by a creditor to the debtor requiring him (debtor) to pay on demand or at a future stated date, the stated sum of money to a named person or to his order. E.g. You are operating a business dealing in distribution and extension of electricity in your community. Write a bill of exchange requesting your customer to pay

your money.

DET ELECTRICITY COMPANY

P.O BOX 23, MUBENDE

TEL: 0784987543

BILL OF  
EXCHANGE

Date. 23/12/2019

To: Kamiro restaurant

P.O BOX 123, Mityana

Two weeks after this date, pay us or our order, the sum of four hundred thousand shillings only (400,000/=), value received being cost of electricity to your restaurant premises.

\_\_\_\_\_  
. JOHN SSEGAWA

FOR DET ELECTRICITY COMPANY.

xxx. Cash deposit slip

This is used to deposit cash into a bank.

|                                |        |        |  |
|--------------------------------|--------|--------|--|
| TWEZIMBE SACCO                 | Shs    | amount |  |
| Name of person paying in ..... | 50,000 |        |  |
| Account number                 | 10,000 |        |  |
| Date: .....                    | 5,000  |        |  |
| Address and tel no:.....       | 1,000  |        |  |
| Amount deposited: .....        | 500    |        |  |
| Amount in words .....          | 100    |        |  |
| .....                          | 50     |        |  |
|                                | total  |        |  |

|                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Depositor's signature:.....<br><br>'Thank you for banking with us'<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

xxxi. Cash sale slip

This serves the same purpose as a receipt but it is used during sale of tangible goods. It does not acknowledge payment of debts.

|                                                                                      |             |                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------|
| SAWUBA POULTRY FARM<br><br>P.O BOX 237, GULU<br><br>TEL: 0789-272783                 |             |                |
| <table border="1" style="margin: auto;"> <tr> <td>CASH SALE SLIP</td> </tr> </table> |             | CASH SALE SLIP |
| CASH SALE SLIP                                                                       |             |                |
| Cah sale slip No. ....                                                               | Date: ..... |                |
| M/S : .....                                                                          |             |                |

| ITEM NO. | QUANTIT<br>Y | PARTICULARS | UNIT COST<br>(Shs) | AMOUNT<br>(SHS) |
|----------|--------------|-------------|--------------------|-----------------|
|          |              |             |                    |                 |
| TOTAL    |              |             |                    | 1,600,000       |

SIGNED: .....

For SAWUBA POULTRY FARM

xxxii. Catalogue.

This is also sent in response to an inquiry. It may go along with a quotation or may be sent instead of a quotation. It contains outline of items sold, their respective prices and their appearances. It has specific products sold, prices per item and real appearance in form of attractive pictures drawn.

xxxiii. Cheque.

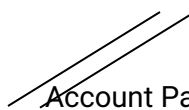
This is a written order from an account holder to his bank to pay a specifies sum of money to the person named on it or to the bearer or to his order. E.g. you are the newly appointed managing director of KALIBU GUEST HOUSE. Write a cheque of shs. 2,000,000/= in favour of Maganjo Grain Millers a supplier of maize grain.

CENTENARY BANK

MASAKA BRANCH

P.O BOX 23, MASAKA

TEL 034567854

 Account Payee only

Date:

Account No. 128293442

Cheque No. 0474

Pay \_\_\_\_\_ -- or order The sum of shs. 2,000,000/=

Two million Uganda shillings only.

Bank code.

Signed. ....

For KALIBU GUEST HOUSE.

NOTE: A cheque has two parts i.e. a cheque leaf and a counter foil. A counter foil remains in the book as a record of payment after removal of the cheque leaf.

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| CENTENARY BANK  |  |
| Date: .....     |  |
| Pay: .....      |  |
| Cheque No. .... |  |
| Shs. ....       |  |

#### xxxiv. Cheque deposit slip

This is used to deposit cheques on the current accounts. E.g you are a shareholder in a collective investment scheme established in your home town. Draw a structure of a cheque deposit slip used in your scheme.

|                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| CENTENARY BANK        |                      |
| MASAKA BRANCH         |                      |
| P.O BOX 23, MASAKA    |                      |
| Branch: .....         | Date:.....           |
| Account name: .....   | Account no.          |
| Bank:.....            | Drawer's account no. |
| Amount in words:..... |                      |

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

UGX: .....

Signature of person paying in .....

Name of person paying in: .....

xxxv. Consignment note.

This summarizes all the details of goods sent by the seller (consignor) to the buyer (consignee). E.g. You own a business dealing in sale of poultry products. Draft a consignment note to be sent to your customer.

**SAWUBA POULTRY FARM**

P.O BOX 237, GULU

TEL: 0789-272783

**CONSIGNMENT NOTE**

Consignment note No. 11 Date: 20/12/2019

To: Uhuru Hotel

P.o box 123, Kamwokya

Please receive the following;

| ITEM NO. | QUANTIT<br>Y | PARTICULARS            | UNIT COST<br>(Shs) | AMOUNT<br>(SHS) |
|----------|--------------|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1.       | 30           | Broilers (80<br>weeks) | 8,000              | 240,000         |
| 2.       | 50           | Broilers (4<br>months) | 15,000             | 750,000         |
| 3.       | 40           |                        | 10,000             | 400,000         |



|       |          |                    |       |           |
|-------|----------|--------------------|-------|-----------|
| 4.    | 30 trays | Off-layers<br>eggs | 7,000 | 210,000   |
| TOTAL |          |                    |       | 1,600,000 |

Prepared by,

Signature:.....

KAKOONA (SALES MANAGER)

Approved by;.....

Signature:.....

Title: .....

xxxvi. Credit note/ letter of credit.

On return of items to the supplier, the supplier issues the buyer with a credit note or letter of credit to correct an overcharge on the original invoice, by deducting the returned goods.

It may be prepared in form of a document or may simply be a letter.

SAWUBA POULTRY FARM

P.O BOX 237, GULU

TEL: 0789-272783

|             |
|-------------|
| CREDIT NOTE |
|-------------|

Credit note No. 131

Date: 23/12/2019

To: Uhuru Hotel

P.o box 123, Kamwokya

We have credited your account as follows. Reason: To correct an overcharge on the invoice

| PARTICULARS         | AMOUNT (SHS) |
|---------------------|--------------|
| Broilers (80 weeks) | 40,000       |
| Broilers (4 months) | 50,000       |
| Off-layers          | 10,000       |

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| eggs  | 210,000 |
| TOTAL | 230,000 |

Prepared by, \_\_\_\_\_ Approved by:.....

Signature:..... Signature:.....

KAKOONA (SALES MANAGER) Title: .....

## xxxvii. Delivery note

This is a document sent by the seller with the goods to assist the buyer check on the goods. It gives the buyer right to claim goods should any of them be damaged.

**SAWUBA POULTRY FARM**  
P.O BOX 237, GULU  
TEL: 0789-272783

DELIVERY NOTE

Delivery note No. .... Date: .....

Purchase order No. ....

To: Uhuru Hotel  
p.o box 123, Kamwokya

please receive the following;

| ITEM NO. | QUANTIT<br>Y | PARTICULARS         | UNIT COST<br>(Shs) | AMOUNT<br>(SHS) |
|----------|--------------|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1.       | 30           | Broilers (80 weeks) | 8,000              | 240,000         |
| 2.       | 50           | Broilers (4 months) | 15,000             | 750,000         |
| 3.       | 40           |                     | 10,000             | 400,000         |

|       |          |                    |       |           |
|-------|----------|--------------------|-------|-----------|
| 4.    | 30 trays | Off-layers<br>Eggs | 7,000 | 210,000   |
| TOTAL |          |                    |       | 1,600,000 |

The following goods are received in good order and conditions.

Delivered by,

Approved by;.....

Signature:.....

Signature:.....

Name of customer:.....

Title: .....

#### xxxviii. Dispatch note/ Advice.

This is sent by the seller to the buyer on receipt of an order from the buyer. If the delivery is not to be made promptly, the seller sends an advice note to acknowledge receipt of the order and to indicate when the delivery is to be made so that the buyer can organize the ware house where to keep the items.

|                                                                                                                              |         |             |                 |              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------------|-----------------|--------------|
| <b>HALALI BISCUITS LIMITED</b><br><b>P.O BOX 23, KASESE</b><br><b>TEL: 0789-442783</b>                                       |         |             |                 |              |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; padding: 5px 20px;">DISPATCH NOTE</div>                          |         |             |                 |              |
| Dispatch note No. 234                                                                                                        |         |             | Date: 24/2/2019 |              |
| To: Lwali supermarket<br>P.O BOX 111, MUBENDE                                                                                |         |             |                 |              |
| The following goods as per your order No. 23 have been sorted ready for dispatch. Organize the warehouse where to keep them. |         |             |                 |              |
| ITEM NO.                                                                                                                     | QUANTIT | PARTICULARS | UNIT COST       | AMOUNT (SHS) |

|       |          |          |       |           |
|-------|----------|----------|-------|-----------|
|       | Y        |          | (Shs) |           |
| 1.    | 30 boxes | Biscuits | 7,000 | 210,000   |
| TOTAL |          |          |       | 1,600,000 |

Prepared by, \_\_\_\_\_ Approved by;.....

Signature:..... Signature:.....

xxxix. Goods received note.

This acknowledges receipts of goods by the buyer.

SAWUBA POULTRY FARM

P.O BOX 237, GULU

TEL: 0789-272783

GOODS RECEIVED  
NOTE

Purchase order No..... Date:

.....

Date of ordering: .....

Received from M/S: .....

| SERIAL<br>NO. | DESCRIPTI<br>ON CODE<br>NO. | STOCK ORDER<br>NO. | QUANTIT<br>Y | RATE IN<br>UGX | AMOUNT<br>(SHS) |
|---------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|
|               |                             |                    |              |                |                 |
| TOTAL         |                             |                    |              |                |                 |

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| Counted by: .....  | Approved by:.....  |
| Inspected by:..... | Signature:.....    |
| Delivered by:..... | Received by: ..... |

xl. Goods returned note.

The goods received by the buyer may have some defects which may tempt/ force him to return them to the seller. When this is done these goods are accompanied by a goods returned note. It is sent by the buyer to the seller.

|                                                                                                                                |                  |              |                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <p>SAWUBA POULTRY FARM</p> <p>P.O BOX 237, LUKAYA</p> <p>TEL: 0789-272783</p>                                                  |                  |              |                                         |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;"> <p>GOODS RETURNED<br/>NOTE</p> </div> |                  |              |                                         |
| Goods returned note No. 784                                                                                                    |                  |              | Date: 11/5/2019                         |
| To : MASAFA FARM SUPPLIERS                                                                                                     |                  |              |                                         |
| P.O BOX NNYENDO                                                                                                                |                  |              |                                         |
| Please accept the following goods as returned:-                                                                                |                  |              |                                         |
| ITEM NO.                                                                                                                       | DETAILS          | REASON.      | QUANTITY                                |
| 1.                                                                                                                             | Chicken drinkers | Damages      | 2                                       |
| 2.                                                                                                                             | Egg trays        | Not required | 4                                       |
| 3.                                                                                                                             | Troughs          | Wrong size   | 5                                       |
| TOTAL                                                                                                                          |                  |              |                                         |
| Please issue us with a credit note                                                                                             |                  |              |                                         |
| Signature:.....                                                                                                                |                  |              | Approved by:.....<br>Received by: ..... |

## xli. Invoice.

This is sent by the seller to the buyer to show the amount due as a result of goods sold on credit.

|                                                                                                                                                                                   |          |               |                    |                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <b>SAWUBA POULTRY FARM</b><br><b>P.O BOX 237, LUKAYA</b><br><b>TEL: 0789-272783</b>                                                                                               |          |               |                    |                 |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; padding: 5px 20px; margin: 0 auto;">INVOICE</div>                                                                     |          |               |                    |                 |
| Invoice No. 74<br>11/5/2019<br><br>Your order no. 13<br><br>M/S KAMMESE RATS TRADERS<br>P.O BOX 231, MUKONO                                                                       |          |               | Date:              |                 |
| ITEM NO.                                                                                                                                                                          | QUANTITY | DETAILS.      | UNIT<br>PRICE(SHS) | AMOUNT(SH<br>S) |
| 1.                                                                                                                                                                                | 30       | Broilers      | 25,000             | 750,000         |
| 2.                                                                                                                                                                                | 20       | Trays of eggs | 10,000             | 200,000         |
| TOTAL                                                                                                                                                                             |          |               | 35,000             | 950,000         |
| Terms of delivery: FREE<br><br>Terms of payment: Net 20 days with 5% discount if fully paid before 5days<br><br>Issued by: Paddy<br><br>Signed, .....<br><br>Title: Sales manager |          |               |                    |                 |

I/ We undertake to comply with the invoice terms and conditions and are fully liable for the amount as stipulated in this invoice.

Signed by, .....

Title: PURCHASING MANAGER

xlii. Letter of inquiry.

This document is sent by a prospective buyer to the seller requesting for information about products available, their prices, delivery terms, terms of sale. It may be made about machines, raw materials, packaging materials, merchandise for sale etc. therefore students should prepare it according to the question. It may also be placed when the buyer has not specified the particulars.

GUWWOMA BREADS

P.O BOX 237, MBALE

TEL: 0789-273483

LETTER OF INQUIRY

Inquiry No. 74  
11/5/2019

Date:

To: Nnyange wheat flour

Mutukula.

Dear sir,

Please quote us our prices, terms of payment and delivery terms for the following machines

| ITEM NO. | QUANTITY | DETAILS.     |
|----------|----------|--------------|
| 1.       | 300kgs   | Baking flour |
| 2.       | 200kgs   | Wheat flour  |
| TOTAL    |          |              |

Note that the items are required urgently.

Prepared by, .....

BAGUMA JOHNSON

PURCHASING MANAGER

xliii. Package sheet.

This shows the details of the goods enclosed in a given package (packet) such that the buyer can know the contents inside even before opening it.

| <p>GUWWOMA BREADS</p> <p>P.O BOX 237, MBALE</p> <p>TEL: 0789-273483</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |              |           |          |          |          |    |     |           |    |     |       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|----|-----|-----------|----|-----|-------|
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; padding: 5px 20px;">PACKAGE SHEET</div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |              |           |          |          |          |    |     |           |    |     |       |
| <p>Package sheet No. 14</p> <p>11/5/2019</p> <p>Purchase order no. 36</p> <p>To: WEWE MINI SUPERMARKET</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">P.O BOX 34, KASESE</p> <p>This package contains following;</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Date:</p> |           |          |          |          |    |     |           |    |     |       |
| <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 15%;">ITEM NO.</th> <th style="width: 35%;">QUANTITY</th> <th style="width: 50%;">DETAILS.</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">310</td> <td>Doughnuts</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">2.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">203</td> <td>cakes</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> |              |           | ITEM NO. | QUANTITY | DETAILS. | 1. | 310 | Doughnuts | 2. | 203 | cakes |
| ITEM NO.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | QUANTITY     | DETAILS.  |          |          |          |    |     |           |    |     |       |
| 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 310          | Doughnuts |          |          |          |    |     |           |    |     |       |
| 2.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 203          | cakes     |          |          |          |    |     |           |    |     |       |



|       |             |               |
|-------|-------------|---------------|
| 3.    | 100 packets | haha biscuits |
| TOTAL |             |               |

Prepared by, .....

BAGUMA JOHNSON

PURCHASING MANAGER

Checked by: .....

AWUNYATI PEERIE

xliv. Price current. This shows the changes from the original prices sent in the price list. It has the same appearance as a price list.

xlv. Price list.

This provides an outline of all goods sold and their respective prices. Sometimes it accompanies a quotation or it may be sent instead of a quotation.

## TUZIMBE GENERAL HARDWARE

P.O BOX 237, ARUA

TEL: 0789-273483

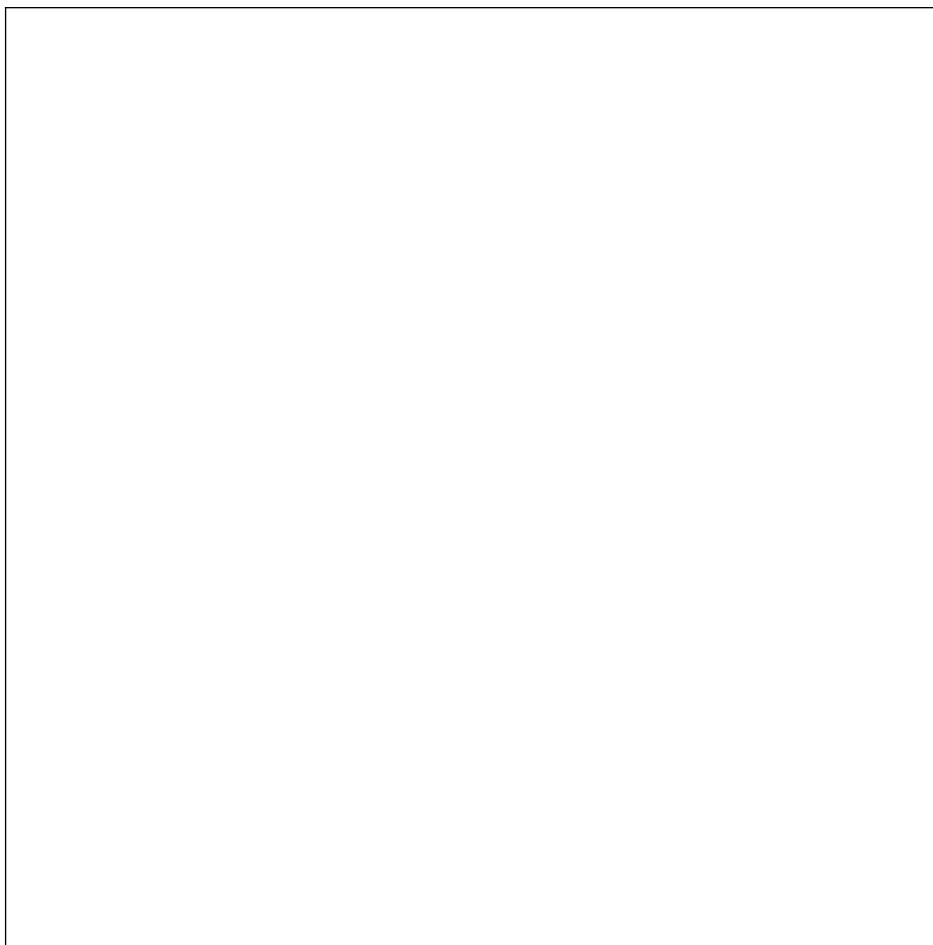
## PRICE LIST

| ITEM NO. | ITEM                  | AMOUNT(SH S) |
|----------|-----------------------|--------------|
| 1.       | Nails (each kg)       | 4,500        |
| 2.       | Iron sheets 28 gauge  | 25,000       |
| 3.       | Iron bars @           | 20,000       |
| 4        | Wheelbarrow           | 100,000      |
| 5        | Paint (each tin)      | 10,000       |
| 6        | Limestone (50 kgs)    | 28,000       |
| 7        | Spades                | 30,000       |
| 8        | Hoes                  | 10,000       |
| 9        | Half bricks           | 200          |
| 10       | Hammers               | 10,000       |
| 11       | Slashers              | 4,500        |
| 12       | Glasses (10mm) @metre | 60,000       |
| TOTAL    |                       |              |

Prepared by, .....

BAGUMA JOHNSON- SALES MANAGER

THANK DEAR OUR CUSTOMERS



xlvi. Proforma invoice.

This resembles an ordinary invoice but it does not debit. It does not hold the addressee liable to pay. It is sent when payment is expected before delivery to enable the buyer obtain necessary permission from the central bank or to help the buyer sort out the customs formalities before the goods reach the port. It applies in International trade. It is issued to customers by seller.

|                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>SURE ELECTRICALS LIMITED</b></p> <p>P.O BOX 237, KAMPALA</p> <p>TEL: 0789-272783</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <p>Proforma Invoice No.....</p> <p>.....</p>                                               | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px auto; width: 80%;"> <p><b>PROFORMA INVOICE</b></p> </div> <p style="text-align: right;">Date:</p> |

| Item NO. | QUANTITY | RATE IN UGX | AMOUNT (SHS) |
|----------|----------|-------------|--------------|
|          |          |             |              |
| TOTAL    |          |             |              |

Accounts are due on demand.

Signature: .....

For: SURE ELECTRICAL LIMITED

xlvi. Promissory note

This is a document addressed by the buyer to the seller promising to pay a stated sum of money to a named person (seller) or his order at a future stated period.

SAWUBA POULTRY FARM

P.O BOX 237, GULU

TEL: 0789-272783

PROMISSORY NOTE

No: .....

Date: 24/11/2019

One month after this date, we promise to pay Ugachick Limited, or their order a sum of three hundred thousand shillings (300,000/=) value received.

.....

MAGERE TIMOTY

FOR: SAWUBA POULTRY FARM

xlvi. Purchase contract note.

This is used in the process of selling shares. It shows the price of the shares, brokerage, amount of stamp duty and transfer duty, fee for registering the name of the new shareholder payable to the company and the details of the shares bought. It is sent by the broker to the client.

e.g. You are a promoter of a newly incorporated limited liability. Design a purchase contract note for company use.

|                                                                                                                                    |  |                                                                                     |                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <b>SAWUBA POULTRY FARM</b><br><b>P.O BOX 237, GULU</b><br><b>TEL: 0789-272783</b>                                                  |  |                                                                                     |                                          |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;"> <b>PURCHASE CONTRACT<br/>NOTE</b> </div> |  |                                                                                     |                                          |
| USE Trading slip No<br><br>Trade date<br><br>Settlement date<br><br>Instructing party                                              |  | Purchase contract No.<br><br>Your order No.<br><br>Your net No.<br><br>Customer No. |                                          |
| PURCHASE BY ORDER AND ON ACCOUNT OF ..... SUBJECT TO RULES,<br>REGULATIONS AND CUSTOMS OF USE. SECURITY .....                      |  |                                                                                     |                                          |
| NO. OF SHARES                                                                                                                      |  | PRICE                                                                               | CONSIDERATIO<br>NS                       |
| Deductions<br><br>Registration<br><br>Contract stamp<br><br>Commission @ 1.9%<br><br>CMA Comm. @ 0.16%<br><br>USE comm... @ 0.16%  |  |                                                                                     | Net amount<br><br>Payable<br><br>inwards |

|                      |  |  |
|----------------------|--|--|
| Compensation @ 0.04% |  |  |
| Total deduction @4%  |  |  |

.....

.....

Stock broker

CUSTOMER

xlix. Purchase order/ORDER/ LOCAL PURCHASE ORDER.

This is a document issued by the buyer to the seller requesting to be supplied with the goods. After the buyer has received a quotation, he selects the goods required and places an order for them. A purchase order states the type of goods required, qualities, quantities and prices for each item ordered for.

## UGA CONSTRUCTIONS LIMITED

P.O BOX 123, BOMBO

TEL: 0789-273483

PURCHASE  
ORDER

Purchase order No. 72

Date: 01/01/2020

To: TUZIMBE GENERAL HARDWARE

P.O BOX 237, ARUA

Please supply and deliver to us the following machines.

| ITEM NO. | DESCRIPTION | QUANTIT Y | UNIT PRICE(SHS) | AMOUNT(SH S) |
|----------|-------------|-----------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1.       | Nails       | 10kgs     | 4,500           | 45,000       |
| 2.       | Iron sheets | 100       | 25,000          | 2500,000     |
| 3.       | Iron bars   | 50        | 20,000          | 1000,000     |
| 4        | Wheelbarrow | 3         | 100,000         | 300,000      |
| 5        | Paint       | 15tins    | 10,000          | 150,000      |
| 6        | Limestone   | 20 kgs    | 28,000          | 540,000      |
| 7        | Spades      | 4         | 30,000          | 120,000      |
| 8        | Hoes        | 10        | 10,000          | 100,000      |
| 9        | Half bricks | 200       | 200             | 40,000       |
| 10       | Hammers     | 13        | 10,000          | 130,000      |
| 11       | Slashers    | 20        | 4,500           | 90,000       |
| TOTAL    |             |           |                 | 5,015,000    |

Delivery date: 9/01/2019

Packaging: mixed

Delivery place: Factory premises

Enclosed: Cheque No. 1928 for shs. 5,000,000 Being part payment for the machines.

Prepared by, .....

BAGUMBA JOHNSON- PURCHASING OFFICER

I. Quotation.

This is a document sent by the seller to the buyer responding to the inquiry. In this document the information requested for by the buyer in the inquiry is provided by the seller in form of feedback to the buyer.

E.g. You own a construction company. Write a quotation to your customer responding to the inquiry you received.



## UGA CONSTRUCTIONS LIMITED

P.O BOX 123, BOMBO

TEL: 0789-273483

## QUOTATION

Quotation No. 72

Date: 01/01/2020

To: TUZIMBE GENERAL HARDWARE

P.O BOX 237, ARUA

Thank you for your inquiry letter No. 36 dated 11/5/2019. I have pleasure of sending you the pricelist for our products as below;

| ITEM NO. | DESCRIPTION | QUANTIT Y | UNIT PRICE(SHS) | AMOUNT(SHS) |
|----------|-------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1.       | Nails       | 10kgs     | 4,500           | 45,000      |
| 2.       | Iron sheets | 100       | 25,000          | 2500,000    |
| 3.       | Iron bars   | 50        | 20,000          | 1000,000    |
| 4        | Wheelbarrow | 3         | 100,000         | 300,000     |
| 5        | Paint       | 15tins    | 10,000          | 150,000     |
| 6        | Limestone   | 20 kgs    | 28,000          | 540,000     |
| 7        | Spades      | 4         | 30,000          | 120,000     |
| 8        | Hoes        | 10        | 10,000          | 100,000     |
| 9        | Half bricks | 200       | 200             | 40,000      |
| 10       | Hammers     | 13        | 10,000          | 130,000     |
| 11       | Slashers    | 20        | 4,500           | 90,000      |
| TOTAL    |             |           |                 | 5,015,000   |

Delivery period: 1 week from date of receipt of an order

Terms: 20% cash discount if payment is done within 1 week

Mode of transport: Our business van

Delivery place: Customer premises

Thanks for giving us priority to be your suppliers.

Prepared by, .....

TUTUNDA JOHNSON- SALES OFFICER

li. Receipt

This is issued by the seller to the buyer to acknowledge receipt of the money from the buyer. A receipt is used paying for services (intangible items). It can also be used when a debtor clears a debt. Otherwise in case of sale of tangible goods, the seller issues a buyer a cash sale or cash sale slip.

|                                                                                         |                                                                                                                   |                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>BUWOOMA DELICIOUS JUICE</b><br><b>P.O BOX 234, KYOTERA</b><br><b>TEL: 0759748844</b> |                                                                                                                   |                        |
| Receipt no.....                                                                         | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">           RECEI<br/>PT         </div> | Date:.....             |
| Received with thanks from:..... Class:.....<br>Stream:.....                             |                                                                                                                   |                        |
| The sum of shillings:.....                                                              |                                                                                                                   |                        |
| Being payment of:.....                                                                  |                                                                                                                   |                        |
| Cash/ Cheque..... Balance .....                                                         |                                                                                                                   |                        |
| Sign                                                                                    | <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 150px; height: 30px; margin: 0 auto;"></div>                          | SHS. ....<br>.....     |
| JUICE.                                                                                  |                                                                                                                   | For: BUWOOMA DELICIOUS |

iii. Standing order.

This is an instruction by a bank customer to his bank to pay a named person a specified amount of money at regular intervals until the arrangement is cancelled. E.g. You are operating a carpentry workshop which uses heavy machinery and thus consume too much power.

|                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>BANKER'S ORDER</b><br><br><br><b>TO: CENTENARY BANK</b><br><br><b>MBALE BRANCH</b> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

With effect from 1<sup>st</sup> June, 2019 and on every first day of each subsequent month thereafter until cancelled by me or us, please pay to;

Umeme Electricity Distributors Ltd for Account of FURNITURE AFRICA workshop P.O BOX 127, MPIGI, Account No. 2349430242 the sum of sh. 400,000/= debiting my or our account with all charges.

KIMERA MARVIN

FOR FURNITURE AFRICA.

liii. Statement of account.

UGA CONSTRUCTIONS LIMITED

P.O BOX 123, BOMBO

TEL: 0789-273483

STATEMENT OF ACCOUNT FOR November  
2019

Statement of Account No. 72

Date: 01/01/2020

To: TUZIMBE GENERAL HARDWARE

P.O BOX 237, ARUA

| ITEM NO. | DATE       | DESCRIPTION        | DEBIT (SHS) | CREDIT (SHS) |
|----------|------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1.       | 3/11/2019  | Invoice No. 21     | 1,300,000   |              |
| 2.       | 5/11/2019  | Invoice No. 99     |             | 100,000      |
| 3.       | 8/11/2019  | Credit note No. 37 | 800,000     |              |
| 4        | 14/11/2019 | Invoice No. 112    |             | 600,000      |
|          |            |                    | 2,100,000   | 700,000      |

|       |  |  |                                   |           |
|-------|--|--|-----------------------------------|-----------|
|       |  |  | 2,100,000                         | 2,100,000 |
| TOTAL |  |  | Amount due to shs.<br>1,400,000/= |           |

Terms of payment 5%, 1 month, 2% after E&OE

Prepared by, .....

TUTUNDA JOHNSON- SALES OFFICER

liv. Tax invoice.

This contains information about what has been supplied from or to a taxable person. It shows details of transaction required to support a claim or refund of an input tax.

e.g. You are operating a chemical manufacturing company in your home town. Design a tax invoice to be issued to your customers.

## AFRICAN CHEMICALS LIMITED

P.O BOX 123, SOROTI

TEL: 0789-273483

## QUOTATION

VAT No. 72

TIN No. B. 99 234844...X

Date: 01/01/2020

|          |                    |  |
|----------|--------------------|--|
| M/S..... | TAX INVOICE<br>NO. |  |
|          | DATE               |  |

| ITEM<br>NO. | QUANTIT<br>Y | DESCRIPTION                         | UNIT<br>PRICE(SH<br>S) | AMOUNT(SH<br>S) |
|-------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------|
|             |              |                                     |                        |                 |
| TOTAL       | E&OE         | SUB TOTAL VAT %.....<br>GRAND TOTAL |                        |                 |

Accounts are due on demand

Prepared by, .....

TUTUNDA JOHNSON- SALES OFFICER

## iv. Tender notice/ invitation for bids.

This is an invitation to a willing supplier of the required materials. It is inviting the willing and prospective suppliers to bid for supply of specified materials. It is both a document and a letter.

SURE CURE HOSPITAL

## P.O BOX KYOTERA

Date: 12/2/2020

To the General Public.

RE: TENDER FOR SUPPLY OF DRUGS

Premier Hotel is a medium sized business dealing in health services including nursing, operation located in Kyotera.

The procurement officer and the managing Director of Premium Hospital invite sealed bids from eligible bidders for the supply of drugs to the hospital. Bidders are required to submit documents in triplicate to the procurement unit room No. 23. Jack Pemper street. The pre qualification document is obtained from the office of the procurement officer on payment of a non-refundable fee of shs. 100,000 (One hundred thousand shillings only).

Prepared by,.....

KABBAT A GEORGE

PROCUREMENT OFFICER

lvi. Withdraw slip.

This is used to withdraw cash from the bank.

DFCU BANK

MASAKA BRANCH

P.O BOX 234, MASAKA

WITHDRAW  
SLIP

Branch: .....

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|                                  |
|----------------------------------|
| Account Number:                  |
| Amount in words: .....           |
| Amount in shs: .....             |
| Customer's signature: .....      |
| Supervisor, ..... FOR: DFCU BANK |

## 19. FORMS

- xv. Client information form.

This is filled by person applying for share in a company. It provides information about a person who wants to become a shareholder in a company.

|                                                                                                                               |  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| CHIEF CHEEF BAKERY COMPANY                                                                                                    |  |
| P.O BOX 234, NTUNGAMO                                                                                                         |  |
| TEL: 0772345678                                                                                                               |  |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">           CLIENT INFORMATION<br/>FORM         </div> |  |
| Form No.....                                                                                                                  |  |
| Surname..... Other Name(s).....                                                                                               |  |
| Business Name (where applicable) .....                                                                                        |  |
| Reg. No..... ID No..... Passport No.....                                                                                      |  |
| Maiden Name (If applicable).....                                                                                              |  |
| Marital status..... Occupation.....                                                                                           |  |
| Date of birth..... Tin No.....                                                                                                |  |
| Physical Address: Building No..... Floor .....                                                                                |  |
| Road/ Street..... P.O Box..... Town.....                                                                                      |  |



|                                              |           |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Tel.....                                     | Fax ..... |
| Contact person.                              |           |
| Surname:..... Other Name(s).....             |           |
| Relationship..... Tel .....                  |           |
| Signature..... Date.....                     |           |
| FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY.                       |           |
| Officer in charge.....                       |           |
| Designation: Supervisor..... Account No..... |           |

xvi. Field visit guide.

This contains questions to be asked during the field visit.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>CHIEF CHEEF BAKERY COMPANY</p> <p>P.O BOX 234, NTUNGAMO</p> <p>TEL: 0772345678</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> <p>FIELD VISIT<br/>GUIDE</p> </div> <p>Name of the business visited.....</p> <p>Location of the business.....</p> <p>Brief description of the business.....</p> <p>Nature and type of the business.....</p> <p>Name of the entrepreneur visited.....</p> <p>Competitors in the area.....</p> <p>Reasons for starting business.....</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

xvii. Funds requisition form.

This is filled to request for funds from the office/cash office.

|                                                                                                                                                                    |                        |                 |                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <p>ELITE PRIMARY SCHOOL</p> <p>P.O BOX 234, KOTIDO</p> <p>TEL: 0772345678</p>                                                                                      |                        |                 |                 |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> <p>FUNDS REQUISITION<br/>FORM</p> </div>                                               |                        |                 |                 |
| Section.....                                                                                                                                                       |                        | Date.....       |                 |
| <p>Funds are required to cover the following expenditure</p>                                                                                                       |                        |                 |                 |
| ITEM                                                                                                                                                               | Details of expenditure | Amount required | Amount approved |
|                                                                                                                                                                    |                        |                 |                 |
| <p>Amount in words.....</p> <p>Person requisitioning funds..... Signature.....</p> <p>Approved total.....</p> <p>Payment authorized by.....</p> <p>Title:.....</p> |                        |                 |                 |

xviii. Interview guide.

This contains questions to be asked during interview sessions.

ERIAS MOTOR GARAGE

P.O BOX 234, KAKUUTO

TEL: 077234111

INTERVIEW  
GUIDE

1. What is your name?
2. Why did you choose to apply for this post?
3. Have you ever served as a cashier?
4. If yes why did you opt to leave the job?
5. Give five duties of a cashier in a business?

xix. Job application form.

This is filled by the applicant applying for a job in a given enterprise.

HHAH HAA TYRES

P.O BOX 23, SSEMBABULE

TEL: 077234111

JOB APPLICATION FORM

Fill this form in triplicate and send it direct to the human resource manager.

1. Post/appointment applied for:.....
2. Father/ guardian's name..... Nationality .....
3. Schools/Colleges/Universities attended
4. When would you be available for appointment if selected.....
5. Have you ever been convicted of a criminal offence? If so give details including the sentence imposed.....

6. I hereby declare to the best of my knowledge that the participants given in this application are true and complete in all aspects.

Date:..... Signed: .....

Names:.....

Referees

(i) .....

(ii) .....

OFFICIAL STAMP

.....

DIRECTOR

xx. Loan application form.

This is filled by the borrower when applying for a loan from a financial institution to act as a loan agreement between the financial institution and the borrower.

HHAA HAA TYRES

P.O BOX 23, SSEMBABULE

TEL: 077234111

LOAN APPLICATION FORM

Part 1: Personal details.

Surname..... Other Name..... First name.....

Sex: F ☐ M ☐ Marital status:..... Employee ID No.....

Residential address.(Attach document to confirm residence)

Plot No..... Street..... Village..... County.....

District .....Email:..... Country:.....

Telephone:..... Mobile:.....

Part 2: Banking details.

Bank: ..... Branch:..... Account no.....

Do you have another loan with other bank/employer: .....

If so provide the following details.

| Bank/ Institution | Credit balance | Monthly installment | Pay A/C No. |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------------|-------------|
|                   |                |                     |             |

Part3. Employment details.

Employment type. FORMAL ☐ INFORMAL SELF PAID  
NONE

Primary occupation:.....

Terms of employment : .....

Employer name:..... Salary date:.....

Net income per month.....

EMPLOYER DETAILS

Plot No..... Village/Town ..... Contact:.....

County..... District..... Country.....

Department length of employment (months/years).....

Part 4. Loan request details

Amount requested for..... Tenor.....

### Part 6. Declaration and acceptance

I hereby certify that all the particulars given by me are true and complete. I understand that upon approval of my loan application I shall be notified of the insurance premium and arrangement fee deducted and my account will be credited with the difference. I also accept all the terms and conditions and agree to be bound by them should my loan be approved.

Applicant's name:..... Signature:..... Date:.....

### Part 7. Employers consent and recommendations (Affix employer's stamp)

- (a) We confirm the details as above. We confirm that we will not accept any instruction to discontinue salary without banks notice.
- (b) We confirm that we shall advise the bank immediately the employees services are terminated and provide necessary assistance to collect the outstanding loan.
- (c) We recommend the loan proposal for approval.

Name:..... Signature:..... Date:.....

FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY.

Loans officer: Name..... Signature..... Date.....

General manager: Name:..... Signature:..... Date:.....

This is followed when carrying out market assessment.

## MAGEZI TAILORING PROJECT

P.O BOX 23, NAMASUBA

### MARKET ASSESSMENT GUIDE

#### 1. Assessment of customer's identity.

- (i) Who are the customers? Are they male or female?
- (ii) What age brackets are they?
- (iii) What kind of occupation do they have?
- (iv) How much income would they be having on a monthly or yearly live?
- (v) Other than individuals, are their companies, businesses or institutions that will buy the products to be provided?
- (vi) Where are they located?
- (vii) What quantity and how often will they buy?
- (viii) How large or small are these companies?
- (ix) Who is in charge of buying the products.
- (x) What are their interests and hobbies?

#### 2. Assessment of customer's wants.

- (i) What particular services or products are your target customers looking for?
- (ii) What special features are they looking for in the product in terms of size?
- (iii) What special services are they looking for; is it longer business hours, free delivery or guarantee?
- (iv) How often do they buy the products?
- (v) How large or small are these companies?

#### 3. Assessment of the competition level.

- (i) Are there many of few businesses that are making the same goods or offering the same services.
- (ii) Are they able to sell or service all the potential customers?
- (iii) How much sales volume do they have?
- (iv) What attracts customers to buy them?
- (v) What strengths do these competitors have?
- (vi) Are there any products similar to the ones you want to produce that are being imported? If yes what is the cost? How is the market responding to it?
- (vii) Are there products being sold in the market that conserve a substitute to the product that you intend to sell?

Signed by:.....

MAGUMBA BORNS

Title: MARKETING MANAGER

xxii. Market survey guide.

This contains questions about the market survey to be conducted about business products. Questions are based on the marketing mix (P's).

MAGEZI TAILORING PROJECT

P.O BOX 23, NAMASUBA

MARKET SURVEY  
GUIDE

The purpose of this survey is to find out the needs of the customers, activities of competitors and the market gap to be filled.

Name of customer..... Sex.....

Age..... Marital status.....

Location .....



| Income segment:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Poor <input type="checkbox"/> | Middle <input type="checkbox"/> | Rich <input type="checkbox"/> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. What products are most preferred and why?</li> <li>2. What unique features should the product have?</li> <li>3. Who are my competitors?</li> <li>4. What are the strengths and weakness of the competitors?</li> <li>5. What prices are charged in the market?</li> <li>6. What prices are afforded by customers?</li> <li>7. What prices will I charge?</li> <li>8. What other opportunities are offered by the market?</li> <li>9. What promotional strategies will be effective?</li> <li>10. What new changes are expected to be made on the product in the near future?</li> <li>11. How will any change in attitude or fashion by the customers affect the sales of your product?</li> <li>12. How did customers get to know about the products?</li> <li>13. How best would the customers wish to be informed?</li> <li>14. How do customers compare our products with competitor's products?</li> <li>15. General comments/ remarks about the business.</li> </ol> |                               |                                 |                               |

xxiii. Medical form

This is used to patients in hospitals to have record of their medication.

## GOOD CARE HOSPITAL

P.O BOX 231, MBALE

## MEDICAL FORM

Form No:..... Date: .....

Name of patient: ..... Sex..... Age: .....

Age..... Marital status..... Residence:.....

Number of visits ..... Temperature: ..... Pressure..... Weight.....

| Date | Clinical notes/<br>diagnosis | treatment                 | Doctors details |
|------|------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
|      | (details of sickness)        | (doctors<br>prescription) |                 |

1. Bring this medical form at every visit

Signed .....

DOCTOR

## xxiv. Performance appraisal form

This is used to judge whether employees have performed to their expected job standards.

## WORK ENGINEERING SOLUTIONS

P.O BOX 125, LUKAAYA

TEL: +256772384576

## STAFF PERFORMANCE APPRAISAL FORM

Period of assessment: From..... To .....

Section A: Personal information (To be filled in by the appraisee)

Name of appraisee..... Date of birth.....

Job title/ rank..... Salary scale.....

Date of present appointment..... Terms of employment.....

Name of appraiser..... Job title/ rank.....

Salary scale..... Department..... Division.....

#### Section B: Assessment of the level of achievement.

| Key outputs | Performance indicators | Performance targets | Performance level | Comments on performance |
|-------------|------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
|             |                        |                     |                   |                         |

#### Section C: Assessment of core competencies.

The maximum points per competence are 5 where 5 is for excellent, 4 very good, 3 good, 2 fair, 1 poor and N/A not applicable.

| COMPETENCE                         | ASSESSMENT                                  |   |   |   |   |         | COMMENT |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---------|---------|
|                                    | Performance level attained<br>(please tick) |   |   |   |   |         |         |
|                                    | 5                                           | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | N/<br>A |         |
| Professional knowledge and skills  |                                             |   |   |   |   |         |         |
| Planning and organizing leadership |                                             |   |   |   |   |         |         |
| Creativity and innovation          |                                             |   |   |   |   |         |         |
| Customer care                      |                                             |   |   |   |   |         |         |
| Any other competence               |                                             |   |   |   |   |         |         |

#### Section D: Action plan to improve performance

| Performance gap | Agreed action | Time frame |
|-----------------|---------------|------------|
|                 |               |            |

Section E: Comments, Recommendations (if any) and signatures

Comments of the appraise.....

Signature..... Date.....

Comments of the appraiser.....

Signature..... Date.....

Comments of the responsible officer.

Name.....

Job title ..... Date.....

xxv. Questionnaire.

This involves carefully designed questions which are printed on paper and then sent to possible respondents to give answers.

SKIN MASTER JERRY

P.O BOX 231, KABOJJA

TEL: 0759746588

QUESTIONNAIRE/CUSTOMER' OPINION  
FORM

Greetings from skin master jerry an enterprise dealing in manufacture and distribution of skin jelly. You are requested to fill for us this questionnaire to help us in our market research programme.

1. Name..... Sex:.....
2. Location and address.....

3. How often do you buy this jelly?.....

4. Is the quality good?        YES                      NO

5. How did you come to know about it?        Adverts                      Friends

6. Is its packaging good/ favorable?        Yes                      No

7. Does it control skin rashes?                      Yes                      No

8. Comment on the prices of 100g,    200g, 500g and 1kg tins of jelly.....

9. How should we improve our products and services? .....

.....

#### xxvi. Stock requisition form

This is filled to request for required stock from the store.

**MAGEZI TAILORING PROJECT**

**P.O BOX 23, NAMASUBA**

**STOCK REQUISITION FORM**

No:.....

Department:..... Date: .....

| Description of materials | Quantity | rate | Value |
|--------------------------|----------|------|-------|
|                          |          |      |       |

Authorized by,..... Supplied from Bin No;.....

Signature:..... Entered in the bin card by:.....

Signed by:.....

Title: .....

#### xxvii. SWOT analysis guide.

This is used to analyse the strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats of a given business.

## MAGEZI TAILORING PROJECT

P.O BOX 23, NAMASUBA

### SWOT ANALYSIS GUIDE

Magezi tailoring project has the following;

#### 1. Strengths.

- (i) High quality products
- (ii) Lower but profitable prices
- (iii) Ability of the product to meet customer's tastes
- (iv) Effectiveness of serving customers
- (v) Ability to attract customers
- (vi) Good location of the business
- (vii) Good and trained marketing staff
- (viii) High and effective entrepreneurial spirit.

#### 2. Weaknesses.

- (i) Marketing skills are ineffective
- (ii) Narrow product line
- (iii) Inability to finance market changes
- (iv) Not used to customers being in a new market
- (v) Poor at calculation thus losses tend to arise.

#### 3. Opportunities.

- (i) Changes in tastes and fashions of customers are in favour of the products
- (ii) Faster market growth
- (iii) High female population within an area

(iv) Taxes are low

4. Threats .

(i) Growing bargaining power of customers

(ii) New businesses are being started

(iii) High level of competition

(iv) Shifts in trade policies

(v) Raising sales of substitute goods

Magezi tailoring has more strengths and opportunities compared to competitors. Thus it is more advantages to operate and therefore has competitive advantage over competitors.

xxviii. Work order form

This is prepared so as to keep accurate record of a customers' order and allocate the work to the employees.

MAGEZI TAILORING PROJECT

P.O BOX 23, NAMASUBA

WORK ORDER FORM

Work order form No:.....

Date: .....

| Name and address of the customer | Work order No. | Work description (Nature of service) | Vehicle description ( Reg. no model) | Employee responsibilities | Starting date and time | Ending date and time | Total job cost | remarks |
|----------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|----------------|---------|
|                                  |                |                                      |                                      |                           |                        |                      |                |         |

Submitted by,

Approved by:.....

|                                               |                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Signature:.....<br><br>Name of customer:..... | Signature:.....<br><br>Title: ..... |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|

## 20. ILLUSTRATIONS

### i. Human resource management

#### ❖ Job advertisement.

The availability of a job can be published through various media like newspapers, radios, posters, televisions etc to make the public aware. It has been in operation for 8 years. It is in the process of expanding its human resource structure and thus need to recruit a dynamic able bodied person to boost its sales.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PREMIUM BAKERY LIMITED</b><br><br><b>P.O BOX 876, GULU</b><br><br><b>0756345632</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; padding: 5px 20px;"> <b>JOB ADVERTISEMENT</b> </div>                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <p>Premium bakery is a medium manufacturing business located in Gulu dealing in manufacture of breads, cakes, daddies, doughnuts etc. it has been in operation for 8 years. It is in the process of expanding its human resources structure and thus need to recruit a dynamic able bodied person to boost its sales.</p> |
| <p><b>Job title: Sales manager</b></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |



**Job duties and responsibilities.**

- Identify suitable promotion strategies
- Recruit sales persons
- Ensure proper distribution of products
- Select appropriate ways of increasing sales.
- Report to: The managing director.

**Qualification:** University Degree in marketing from a recognized institution.

**Age:** 20- 30 years

**Experience:** Atleast four (4) years of field experience working as a marketing personnel.

**Duty station.** Gulu town

**Remuneration:** Negotiable and attractive but depends on sales results.

**Other competences**

- Preferebly male
- Should be single
- Should have knowledge about different languages.

Successful applicants shall be contacted on Phone No. 0783177885

**Submission of applicants:** Qualified and interested Ugandans should submit in their hand written applications in duplicate with certified copies of academic documents, curriculum vitae, addresses of any two referees to;

The human Resource Manager

Premium Bakery Limited

Tel: 0783177885

❖ **Job description/ Job analysis.**

This is a written summary of what a worker is supposed to do on a specific job. It shows

the job holders responsibilities, specific tasks and reporting relationships.

BEST LIQUID SOAP

P.O BOX 44, KABOJJA

TEL: 0786453272

#### JOB DESCRIPTION FOR A CASHIER

Job title: Cashier

Job duties and responsibilities

- Preparing books of accounts
- Controlling cash flows in the business
- Prepare worker's payroll

Nature of supervision: Reports to the General Manager

Equipments to be used: Computers, office phone, stapling machine etc

Working conditions: Workers are to be given breakfast, lunch, evening te, transport and medical allowances.

Relationship with other jobs: To ensure that all departments are well facilitated in terms of funding.

Prepared by .....

MABEERE JACKSON

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER

#### ❖ Job specification.

This is a detailed statement of the minimum acceptable human qualities required for successful performance of a job.

TUGUNYWA BAR

P.O BOX 236, MAKINDYE

TEL: 075345876

### JOB SPECIFICATION FOR A BAR ATTENDANT

Physical requirements: Good health

Qualifications: Should possess a diploma in leisure and hospitality from a recognized institution

Working experience: 4 years working in a bar

Remuneration: Negotiable but attractive

### Other competencies

- Preferably female
- Between 20 -29 years
- Residing in Makindye
- Should be single
- Should be computer literate

Prepared by, .....

SSEGAMWENGE OLGA

### ❖ Curriculum vitae.

This shows the brief background of a person applying for a job. It includes education profile and working experience.

### **CURRICULUM VITAE.**

#### **Personal data:**

**NAME:** WAREN hohn

**ADDRESS:** SSANJE – ST MARY’S SECONDARY SCHOOL

**DATE OF BIRTH:** 5<sup>th</sup> November 1995

**RELIGION:** Christian  
**TELEPHONE:** 0759748844 / 0783177885  
**Email:** [warenwaren2@gmail.com](mailto:warenwaren2@gmail.com)  
**VILAGE/ PARISH:** KASOGA KAKUUTO  
**HOME DISTRICT:** KYOTERA  
**NATIONALITY:** UGANDAN

**Education and qualifications:**

**2017-** Bachelor of Science with Education with Mathematics And Economics. (DEGREE)  
 Kampala University. Expected 2020.  
**2015-2016** Uganda Advanced Certificate of Education (PEM/ICT)  
 ST MARY'S SECONDARY SCHOOL- SSANJE.  
**2011-2014** Uganda Certificate of Education,  
 Sacred Heart Kiteredde Secondary School- Kyotera.  
 20 AGGREGATES. DIVISION ONE.  
**2007- 2010** Primary Leaving Examinations  
 St Simon Nazareth Primary School – Kyebe.  
 8 AGGREGATES DIVISION ONE  
**2005 - 2006** Primary Three & Primary Two :- Mary Hill Preparatory School  
 Kakuuto  
**2004** Primary One :- Kakuuto Advanced Primary School  
**2002- 2003** Nursery School :- Nkoni Nursery and Primary School Kakuuto.

**WORK AND RESPONSIBILITIES**

| YEAR         | RESPONSIBILITIES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2020 -       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 2017- 2019   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Teaching Commerce and Entrepreneurship in secondary school.</li> <li>• Started Business Club St Mary's Secondary Ssanje and became its Patron.</li> <li>• Elected as the In service M.P, Kampala University.</li> <li>• Produced a Wednesday weekly program of development "Olugendo Lwenkulakulana" on radio SEMA- a community radio based in Ssanje.</li> <li>• S.2 Class teacher.</li> </ul> |
| 2015 - 2016: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Speaker Students' Parliament (Council)</li> <li>• The chief mobiliser- Patriotism activities. St Mary's ssanje.</li> <li>• Leader Youths Desk- Partnership In Development (PID), Makindye.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 2011 - 2014: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Became in charge of the metrology office, Kiteredde Statistics Centre,</li> <li>• Renewed and Coordinated Writers' Club.</li> <li>• Exhibited local soap making process and Won the Uganda Science Education Program (USEP)- Contest.</li> <li>• Became the Education minister and later Vice President of Kiteredde Secondary school.</li> </ul>                                               |
| 2006 - 2010  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Head Prefect St Simon Nazareth</li> <li>• Debate prefect</li> <li>• Class captain</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

**SKILLS**

Teaching, Computer literate, Driving, Public speaking, Good communication, Creative and Innovative, risk taking, negotiation, business planning, coping with change,

**REFEREES:**

1. MR. KALALI CHRISTOPHER

0752 641416

DEPUTY HEAD TEACHER

**KITEREDDE SEC. SCHOOL-KYOTERA.**

-----

2. MR. SSEMBATYA FRANCIS

+256704419346 / +256772913998

LECTURER

**KISUBI BROTHERS UNIVERSITY.**

-----

-----

3. HON. KALEMBA CHRISTOPHER

0772518671

MEMBER OF PARLIAMENT (2016-to date)

**KAKUUTO CONSTITUENCY-KYOTERA DISTRICT.**

***DECLARATION***

I Warence Hohn do hereby certify that the information given above is true and complete to the best of my knowledge with on material facts being misrepresented or suppressed.

Signed:

This \_\_\_\_\_ Day of

❖ Employee personal record card.

This records information concerning workers employed in an enterprise.

|                                                                                                                                  |         |                    |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|--------------------|--------|
| <b>KYOTERA PREPARATORY SCHOOL</b><br><b>P.O BOX 234, MUTUKULA</b><br><b>TEL: 0784 665544</b>                                     |         |                    |        |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;"> <b>PERSONAL RECORD<br/>CARD</b> </div> |         |                    |        |
| Name of employee..... Address.....                                                                                               |         |                    |        |
| Qualification and training.....                                                                                                  |         |                    |        |
| Date of birth.....                                                                                                               |         |                    |        |
| Future transfer, promotion or Dismissal .....                                                                                    |         |                    |        |
| Ref. No                                                                                                                          | NSSF NO | Date of employment | Salary |
|                                                                                                                                  |         |                    |        |
| Medical History .....                                                                                                            |         |                    |        |
| Terms of employment .....                                                                                                        |         |                    |        |

## 21. MARKETING

Areas covered under marketing include adverts

All advertisements look alike but change appearance depending on the material used to make the advert.

Features of an advert.

- Name and address of the business
- Location of the business
- Line of business i.e. what the business deals in.
- Frame
- Attractive/ appealing words
- Logo
- Illustrations.

N.B All adverts are filled in i.e. Designing is not applicable.

xvii. Advert for goods.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>TESCO BAKERY</b></p> <p><b>P.O BOX 178, KASESE</b></p> <p><b>TEL: 0758746382</b></p> <p><b>Dealers in manufacture of breads, cakes, daddies and doughnuts.</b></p> <p><b>We manufacture breads of 2kgs, 1kg, ½ kg and small bans of shs 200 each, cakes of shs 500 @, 300@ and shs. 200@, doughnuts of sh. 500@ and 200@ and daddies of shs. 1000 @ packet.</b></p> <p><b>Located along Kakumiro road behind Kasese Referral hospital.</b></p> <p><b>Try us for quality products.</b></p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|



- xviii. Advert for sale of assets/ assets disposal.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p style="text-align: center;">TWEKULAKULANYE BANK SERVICES</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P.O BOX 14, FORT POTAL</p> <p style="text-align: center;">0785738291</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b><u>SALE BY AUCTION</u></b></p> <p>Under registration of property Act, CAP 232</p> <p>Following the instruction from our client Katumbwe Edward we hereby advertise sale of his security a PICK UP at shs 7,000,000/= worth value defaulted from Twekulakulanye Bank Services.</p> <p><b>Conditions of sale.</b></p> <p><b>Date of sale:</b> 14 days from date of advertising</p> <p><b>Time of sale:</b> 11:00am at the bank premises</p> <p><b>Terms of sale:</b> cash/ bank draft subject to reserve price.</p> <p><b>Place of sale:</b> At the premises of our bank</p> <p><b>Viewing:</b> Arrange with us at our offices.</p> <p>Signed: .....</p> <p style="text-align: center;">KAGONGO HEHE</p> <p style="text-align: center;">General Manager</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- xix. Advert for services

|                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p style="text-align: center;">CURE BEST CLINIC</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P.O BOX 124, LYANTONDE</p> <p style="text-align: center;">078922233374</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Dealers in all medical facilities including dental services, Antenatal and Post natal care, family planning, laboratory services, X- rays and general treatment, counseling services in all health fields.

Located along Lyantonde road.

xx. Banners.

This is printed on piece of cloth normally hanged on buildings, trees and electric poles. It is carrying the same information as other advertising media.

xxi. Bill boards.

xxii. This is an advert placed on big post and planted along bust roads and in cities basically to capture mass market.

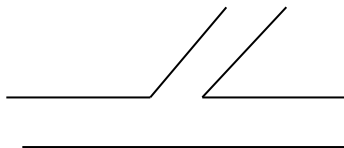
EMO ELECTRICAL SERVICES

Dealers in sale and repair of electrical appearances.

Located at Plot 23, Waggwa road opposite Centenary bank in Alur, town.

"Best services ever"

xxiii. Brochure.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>KAMU KAMU TRADERS</b><br/> <b>P.O BOX 7884, KATIKAMU</b><br/> <b>TEL: 0772345678</b></p> <p><b>Mission:</b><br/>         To improve homes through providing better household items.</p> <p><b>Vision:</b><br/>         A leading provider of house items.</p> | <p><b>Products:</b><br/>         Televisions, Woofers, Sofa sets, Chairs, Side board.</p> <p><b>Uniqueness:</b><br/>         We offer at cheapest price, provide delivery and consultation services.</p> | <p><b>Location:</b><br/>         We are located in Katikamu town opposite Centenary Bank.</p>  <p>To highway      From<br/>Kampala</p> <p>Try us for quality household items.</p> <p>For more information: Call<br/>0772345678</p> <p>For prompt services</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

xxiv. Business card.

This is also used to promote business products. It contains the names of the person owning the card and designation/ title.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p style="text-align: center;"><b>COOL THE THIRSTY WATERS</b></p> <p>Dealers in packaging and distribution of high quality, clean, safe and purified drinking water.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>KIYENJE COCK</b><br/> <b>GENERAL MANAGER</b></p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Located in Kyengera town

TEL: 07564729110

xxv. Contract information board

xxvi. Flier

xxvii. Label.

This is placed on the packaging materials of products that are packaged. It includes name of product and name of business, address, ingredients used, manufacturing and expiry date, batch number and guidelines regarding product usage. Sometimes this information is printed on the packaging material or a label is a fixed.

### WOONA FEVER SYRUP

Prepared from local herbs by Herbal Centre Manufacturers.

Located at Kakuuto

Shake well before use.

Adults 2 X 4 tea spoonful daily.

Infants ½ X 4 tea spoonful daily



Keep in a cool and dark place away from children.

Batch No. 234812HZ MFD 2.4.2019 EXP. 2.4.2021

xxviii. Logo.

# A.D.F.S

AFRICAN DEVELOPMENT FARMS – P.O BOX 347, KABALAGALA

For poultry and livestock products.

## xxix. Menu.

This is found in restaurants and hotels indicating the food items and drinks offered and their respective prices.

|                     |        |
|---------------------|--------|
| SUPREME HOTELS.     |        |
| P.O BOX 234, KIBOGA |        |
| TEL: 07843621280    |        |
| 'For best dishes'   |        |
| MENU CARD           |        |
| 1. Dishes           |        |
| Passion juice       | 1,000  |
| Soda                | 1,000  |
| Mineral water       | 1000   |
| Bushera             | 600    |
| Milk tea            | 1,000  |
| Black tea           | 500    |
| 2. Snacks           |        |
| Chips and liver     | 6000   |
| Chips and chicken   | 10,000 |
| Chapats             | 500    |
| Kikomando           | 1000   |
| Sausage             | 2,000  |
| 3. Drinks.          |        |
| Luwombo special     |        |

|                      |        |
|----------------------|--------|
| Gravy                | 4500   |
| Beef                 | 8000   |
| Fish                 | 4000   |
| G nuts and mushrooms | 4,0000 |

Served with Matooke, rice, posho, Kalo, Cassava, Pumpkins, Tomatoes, Yams, Irish, Macrons etc

xxx. Newspaper advert.

xxxi. Posters.

xxxii. Prospectus.

This is used to advertise company shares. It is aimed at inviting shareholders to buy shares from the company.

XIXII COMPUETR DISTRIBUTERS LIMITED.

P.O BOX 343, KARAMOJA

TEL: 077234561

PROSPECTUS

Date: 23/12/2020

Xixii Computer distributors limited invites the Public to subscribe to shares totaling to 10,000 each at a value of 1000 shillings.

History of the company. The company has been in operation for 2 years and it has 10,000 shares of which 6000 will be ordinary and the balance preference shares.

Future plans of the company. It intends to have 6000 ordinary shares and hopes to provide them other products like bonds and debentures.

Products dealt in. it deals in ordinary and preference shares and bonds.

Risks faced in its operations. Limited capital for expansion

Purpose of additional capital. To meet the minimum requested capital of shs. 10,000,000

Dividends shared in the past. No dividends shared in the past since it has just been incorporated into a company.

Signed .....

KIBAATA XVISIXI

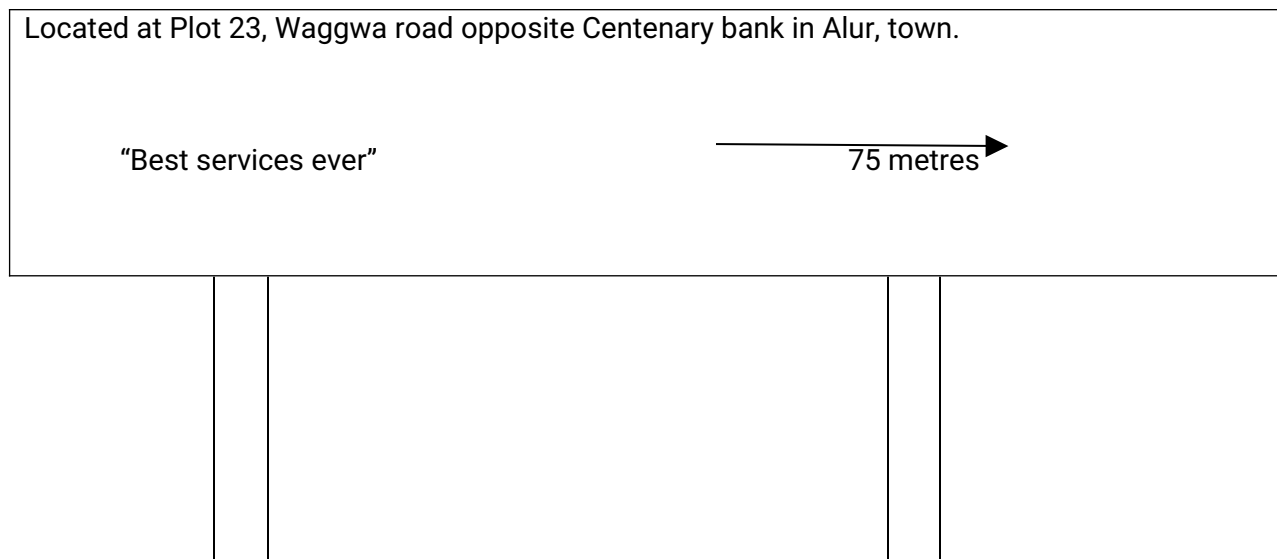
xxxiii. Radio announcement

xi. Signpost .

This shows direction of the business premises as long as advertising the business products.

EMO ELECTRICAL SERVICES

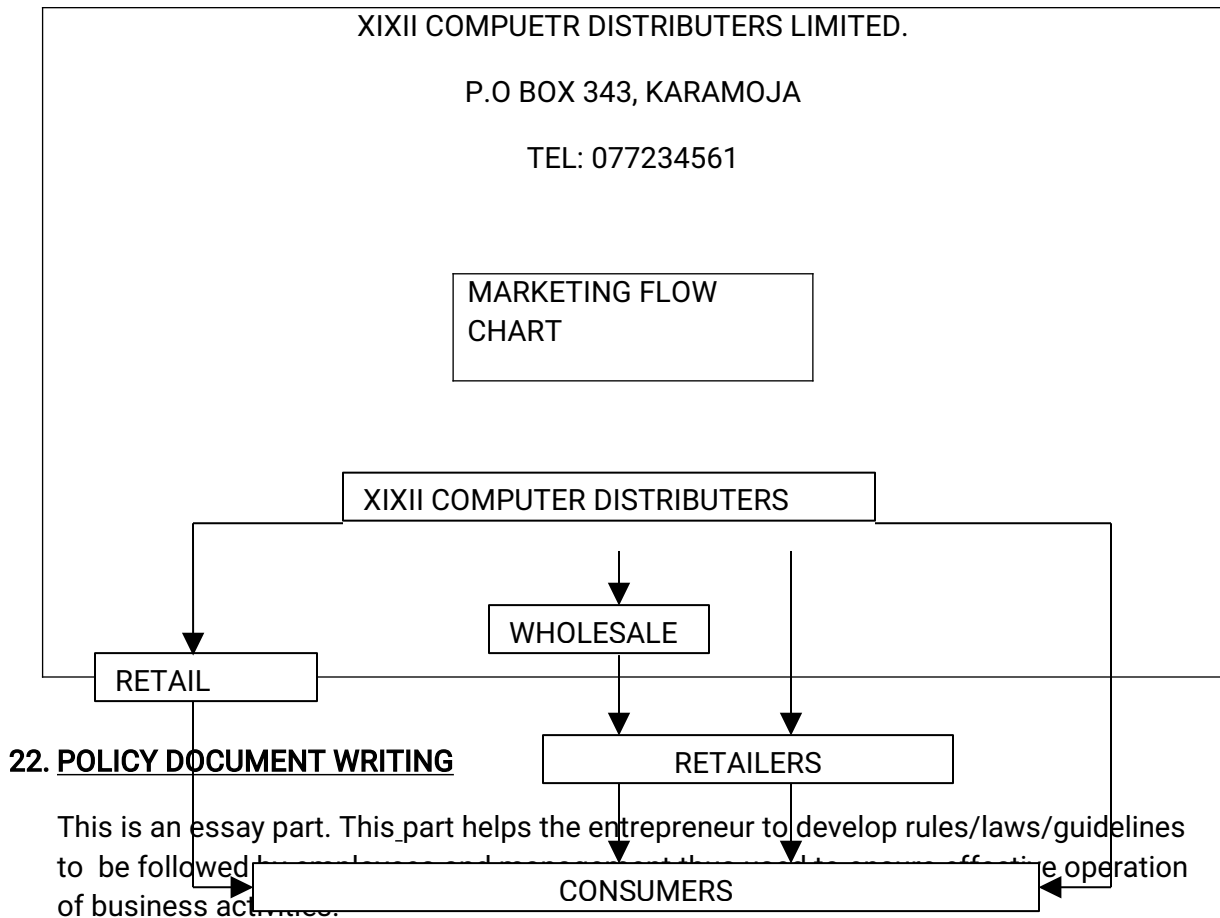
Dealers in sale and repair of electrical appearances.



xii. Marketing flow chart.

This illustrates the flow of the entrepreneur's products to the final consumers.





- ✓ **Words** like 'I', we, you, he, she, should, may, can, might, to be, would, must etc. **MUST NOT BE USED.** i.e. No personalizing.
- ✓ Must if used, is followed by a condition for example if only, when, unless, incase. Like Spare parts must be imported from America, unless India has no adequate spare parts.
- ✓ The heading must include the name of the business and address and statement of the guidelines.
- ✓ In most cases, policy guidelines are extracted from theory part with headings such as ways, measures, techniques, strategies etc

E.G.

xxxvi. Guidelines for handling difficult customers.

## WELCOME RESTAURANT

P.O BOX 23, NAMASUBA

|                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>GUIDELINES FOR HANDLING DIFFICULT CUSTOMERS TO FOLLOWED BY<br/>EMPLOYEES OF WELCOME RESTAURANT</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

1. *Employees shall acknowledge and evaluate customer's objections.*
2. *Employees shall listen carefully to the words being used and feelings being expressed by difficult customers.*
3. *Employees shall let the customers to open up so that you can understand the basis for their being difficult.*
4. *Employees shall buy time to look at the customers' issue later if the customer raises some important points.*
5. *Employees shall hold your argument until the customer is ready for them when trying to convince the customer from your point of view.*
6. *Employees shall compensate customers by price reductions or refund / replacement of goods in case the previous purchases had a problem.*
7. *Employees shall apologize to difficult customers in case the customers being difficult is understood.*
8. *Employees shall attend to difficult customer's issues immediately.*

Submitted by,

Approved by;.....

Signature:.....

Signature:.....

KAMWA MOUTH.

Title: .....

## xxxvii. Guidelines for developing creative ability of the staff

- *Employees shall thinking beyond the invisible frameworks that surrounds*

*problems/ situations*

- *Employees shall recognize when assumptions are being made and challenge them, which shall create new dimensions or directions of thinking and solutions to problems.*
- *Employees shall identify narrow minded thinking and widen the field of vision by drawing on the experience of other businesses and individuals.*
- *Employees shall being ready to use unpredictable events to their advantage.*
- *Employees shall adapt ideas from more than one source for example, newspapers, personal contacts etc*
- *Employees shall transfer technology from one field to another as an innovative solution to a problem.*
- *Employees shall note down ideas that suddenly drop into the mind before they are forgotten.*
- *Employees shall suspend judgment to encourage the creative process and avoid premature criticism.*
- *Employees shall know when to leave a problem (remaining aware but detached) until solutions emerge i.e being patient for solutions to emerge.*
- *Employees shall try when appropriate to make strange things familiar and the familiar things strange to spark new ideas.*
- *Employees shall use their analogy (to improve imaginative thinking) to find models and solutions in nature, in existing products and services and in other organizations that are not always reinvesting the wheel, that is to say, copying from other organization what they have inverted. In the fine arts industry for example many designs are copied from nature like from butterflies and other creatures.*
- *Employees shall make connection with points that are apparently irrelevant, outside one's sphere of expertise and lacking in authority.*
- *Employees shall tolerate ambiguity (Doubtfulness or uncertainty as*

*regards interpretation) and occasionally living with doubt and uncertainty. Things that don't seem clear make one to be curious leading to creative thinking.*

- *Employees shall use their unconscious mind for example by sleeping on a problem to generate creative solutions.*
- *Employees shall explore through processes and the key elements of the mind at work in analyzing, valuing and synthesizing.*
- *Employees shall have a wide attention span and range of interests which allows generating of solutions from various activities one is interested in like music, drama, rearing, repairing etc...*

xxxviii. Guidelines for effective gender partnership

xxxix. Guidelines for ensuring hygiene in the work place

xl. Guidelines for ensuring sustainability

xli. Guidelines for handling machinery

xl.ii. Guidelines for selecting machinery and equipment

xl.iii. Guidelines for selling on credit

xl.iv. Guidelines to ensure gender balance of employees

xl.v. Guidelines to ensure proper inventory management

xl.vi. Guidelines to minimize accidents/ safety

xl.vii. Guidelines to minimize production costs

xl.viii. Guidelines to promote innovative ability of employees

xl.ix. Hire purchase agreement

l. Job requirements

li. Partnership deed

BUWOOMA DELICIOUS JUICE

P.O BOX 234, KYOTERA

TEL: 0759748844

PARTNERSHIP  
DEED

- i) Business registered name, address and location: The business shall be Buwooma Delicious Juice, P.O BOX 234, KYOTERA. The business shall be located at Kalisizo Kyotera District.
- ii) Purpose of the business.
- iii) The names, addresses and occupations of the partners
- iv) Nature/type of partners
- v) Duties and responsibilities of the partners
- vi) Capital contributions by partners
- vii) Sharing of profits and losses.
- viii) Partner's rights to drawings
- ix) Salary/ allowances for active partners
- x) Interest charged on drawings
- xi) Interest on capital
- xii) Procedure of settling disputes
- xiii) Interest on loans from partners
- xiv) Dissolution of partnership
- xv) Procedure of admitting new partners
- xvi) Procedure for calling meetings
- xvii) During of the partnership
- xviii) Commencement date for partnership business
- xix) Procedure for management of books of accounts

|       |                                         |
|-------|-----------------------------------------|
| xx)   | Procedure for election of management    |
| xxi)  | Declaration of partners                 |
| xxii) | Witnesses' names, signature and titles. |

- lii. Policy guidelines for retention of the employees
- liii. Procurement policy
- liv. Quality guidelines
- lv. Rules and regulations
- lvi. Sale of land agreement
- lvii. Security guidelines
- lviii. Security guidelines
- lix. Store management policy
- lx. Terms and conditions for a contract
- lxi. Terms and conditions for sale of the old tractor
- lxii. Terms and conditions for selling on hire purchase
- lxiii. Vehicle maintenance policy
- lxiv. Welfare guidelines
- lxv. Borrowing/ credit policy
- lxvi. Cleanliness guidelines
- lxvii. Code of conduct to ensure discipline
- lxviii. Credit policy
- lxix. Employment contract
- lxx. Environmental impact assessment policy
- lxxi. Guidelines followed on receipt of items from suppliers

## **23. PROGRAMMES**

### **PROGRAMMES**

The programmes contain the following components;

- (i) Heading
- (ii) Frame
- (iii) Name of the business and address
- (iv) Name of the program
- (v) Date column
- (vi) Activity (must be in chronological order and present continuous tense)
- (vii) Person in charge
- (viii) Prepared by; Signature, Name and Title.
- (ix) Approved by; signature, name and title.

Note: All programmes are prepared i.e. they are not designed.

The remarks column is not filled in but just left blank since the activities are not yet done.

Examples of programmes contain the following;

- Credit recovery programme
- Induction programme
- Interview programme
- Launching programme
- Machine maintenance program
- Program for minimizing risks
- Program for obtaining a loan
- Programme for a one day training and sensitization workshop
- Programme for handling undisciplined cases

- Programme for obtaining insurance policy
- Programme for preparing for negotiation
- Programme for tax compliance
- Programme to be followed when purchasing business requirements
- Promotion programme
- Recruiting programme
- Training programme

Example:

#### 1. RECRUITMENT PROGRAMME

This shows the steps followed when obtaining the workers required in an enterprise.

QN. You are the Human Resource Manager of a Secretarial business that receives many customers and has to recruit more sales personnel due to increased market for stationery. Prepare a programme for recruiting more workers.



## ZALI SECRETARIAL BUREAU

P.O BOX 98, LUWERO

TEL. 0789456743

|                                  |
|----------------------------------|
| <p>RECRUITMENT<br/>PROGRAMME</p> |
|----------------------------------|

| DATE                                                   | ACTIVITY                                                     | PERSON IN CHARGE                                                          | REMARKS |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| 3 <sup>st</sup> – 6 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019   | Identifying posts<br>requiring more workers                  | Human Resource Manager                                                    |         |
| 7 <sup>th</sup> – 9 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019   | Advertising the jobs                                         | Human Resource Manager                                                    |         |
| 10 <sup>th</sup> -14 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019  | Receiving applications                                       | Human Resource Manager                                                    |         |
| 15 <sup>th</sup> - 18 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019 | Cross checking<br>applications against job<br>specialization | Human Resource Manager                                                    |         |
| 19 <sup>th</sup> -20 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019  | Short listing applicants                                     | Human Resource Manager                                                    |         |
| 21 <sup>th</sup> - 24 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019 | Inviting applicants for<br>interviews                        | Human Resource Manager                                                    |         |
| 25 <sup>th</sup> - 26 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019 | Conducting interviews                                        | Human Resource Manager<br><br>General Manager<br><br>Heads of Departments |         |

|                                                         |                                                                               |                                           |  |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|--|
| 27 <sup>th</sup> - 31 <sup>st</sup><br>August,<br>2019  | Analyzing interview<br>results and contacting<br>referees                     | General Manager<br>Human Resource Manager |  |
| 1 <sup>st</sup> – 5 <sup>th</sup><br>September,<br>2019 | Selecting suitable<br>candidates                                              | Human Resource Manager<br>General Manager |  |
| 6 <sup>th</sup><br>September,<br>2019                   | Appointing successful<br>candidates and placing<br>them in their work places. | General Manager                           |  |
| 7 <sup>th</sup> -12 <sup>th</sup><br>September,<br>2019 | Giving induction training<br>to newly recruited<br>employees                  | Human Resource Manager<br>General Manager |  |

Prepared by .....

.....

LAURA MBUGO

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER  
MANAGER

Approved by

MUBIRU HARUNA

GENERAL

## 2. PROGRAMME FOR CONDUCTING INTERVIEWS

This shows the procedure to be followed when conducting interviews.

Qn. You are operating a Hotel in a busy trading centre and you are in the process of transforming the Human Resource Department. Draft a programme for conducting

interviews for job applicants.

NICE HOTEL

P.O BOX 98, MBALE

TEL. 0789456743

PROGRAMME FOR CONDUCTING  
INTERVIEWS

| DATE       | TIME    | ACTIVITY                                 | PERSON IN CHARGE                                                 | REMARKS |
|------------|---------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| 18/09/2019 | 2:00pm  | Identifying and forming interview panels | Human Resource Manager                                           |         |
|            | 3:30pm  | Organizing interview rooms               | Receptionist                                                     |         |
| 25/09/2019 | 8:00am  | Arriving of the short listed candidates  | Public Relations Officer                                         |         |
|            | 9:00am  | Registering applicants                   | Receptionist                                                     |         |
|            | 10:00am | Starting the interviews                  | Heads of Department<br>General Manager<br>Human Resource Manager |         |
| 1/10/2019  | 9:00am  | Inviting applicants for interviews       | Human Resource Manager                                           |         |
|            | 1:00am  | Conducting interviews                    | Human Resource Manager<br>General Manager                        |         |

|           |        |                                                                          |                        |  |
|-----------|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|--|
|           |        |                                                                          | Heads of Departments   |  |
| 2/10/2019 | 8:00am | Communicating to successful candidates to pick their appointment letters | Human Resource Manager |  |

Prepared by .....

.....

LAURA MBUGO

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER  
MANAGER

Approved by

MUBIRU HARUNA

GENERAL

### 3. INDUCTION/ OR ORIENTATION PROGRAMME.

This is the procedure followed to equip newly recruited workers with knowledge regarding the activities done in the enterprise and all aspects regarding their jobs. It is aimed at making new workers used to the enterprise and telling their job expectations.

Qn. You are the personnel manger of GREAT OPPORTUNITIES, an enterprise dealing in electrical appliances. The business has recruited new workers to improve efficiency. Develop a programme for orientation of new workers.

## GREATER OPPORTUNITIES LIMITED

P.O BOX47, KARAMOJA

TEL: 0784634343

## ORIENTATION PROGRAMME

| DATE                         | ACTIVITY                                                                                                                                                 | PERSON IN CHARGE                               | REMARKS |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|---------|
| 3 <sup>st</sup> August, 2019 | Receiving and welcoming new workers and receiving their personal data                                                                                    | Human Resource Manager                         |         |
| 4 <sup>th</sup> August, 2019 | Introducing the new workers, giving a brief History and general information about electrical appliances                                                  | Head of Departments<br>Human Resource Manager  |         |
| 5 <sup>th</sup> August, 2019 | Explain to the new workers the business mission, vision, goals and objectives, philosophies, care development opportunities like training and promotion. | Managing Director<br>Human Resource Manager    |         |
| 6 <sup>th</sup> August, 2019 | Issuing written terms and conditions of employment and the new workers are guided through them and they sign to comply with them.                        | Human Resource Manager<br>Heads of Departments |         |
| 7 <sup>th</sup> August, 2019 | Giving new workers information on worker- employer relations i.e. trade union membership, communication procedure, managing director with other          | General Manager                                |         |

|                                                         |                                                                               |                                                                                 |  |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
|                                                         | workers.                                                                      |                                                                                 |  |
| 21 <sup>th</sup> - 24 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019  | Inviting applicants for interviews                                            | Human Resource<br>Manager                                                       |  |
| 25 <sup>th</sup> - 26 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019  | Conducting interviews                                                         | Human Resource<br>Manager<br><br>General Manager<br><br>Heads of<br>Departments |  |
| 27 <sup>th</sup> - 31 <sup>st</sup><br>August,<br>2019  | Analyzing interview results and<br>contacting referees                        | General Manager<br><br>Human Resource<br>Manager                                |  |
| 1 <sup>st</sup> – 5 <sup>th</sup><br>September,<br>2019 | Selecting suitable candidates                                                 | Human Resource<br>Manager<br><br>General Manager                                |  |
| 6 <sup>th</sup><br>September,<br>2019                   | Appointing successful candidates<br>and placing them in their work<br>places. | General Manager                                                                 |  |
| 7 <sup>th</sup> -12 <sup>th</sup><br>September,<br>2019 | Giving induction training to newly<br>recruited employees                     | Human Resource<br>Manager<br><br>General Manager                                |  |

Prepared by, .....

OKELLO PETER

PRODUCTION MANAGER

Approved by,.....

LWASA AMBROSE

GENERAL MANAGER

#### 4. PROMOTION PROGRAMME

This shows the procedure followed when promoting business products.

Qn. i) You are the proprietor of a honey producing business. Draw a day's programme to promote your products.

SWEETIEHONEY PRODUCTS LIMITED

P.O BOX 98, MBARARA

TEL. 0789456743

PROGRAMME FOR PROMOTION

| DATE                    | TIME            | ACTIVITY                                                                                                              | PERSON IN CHARGE | REMARKS |
|-------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|---------|
| 18/09/2019<br>2/10/2019 | 10:00Am         | Arrival of the honey promotion team, invited guests and registration                                                  | Kabushenga John  |         |
|                         | 10:20am-10:40am | Prayer, singing of the national Anthem and any other relevant anthem.                                                 | Abedi Jamil      |         |
|                         | 11:00am         | Welcoming the invited guests, general public and introduction of the honey promotion team and the management.         | Matu Daniel      |         |
|                         | 12:00pm         | Show casing, promotional music, drama and films organizing prize winning raffles, giving out product samples of honey | Kyadondo Bob     |         |

|  |        |                                                                                   |                |  |
|--|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--|
|  | 3:00am | The marketing manager makes a speech about the business and honey being promoted. | Kyaggwe John   |  |
|  | 5:00am | Closure and music                                                                 | Tumukunde Fred |  |

Prepared by .....

.....

LAURA MBUGO

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER  
MANAGER

Approved by

MUBIRU HARUNA

GENERAL

Qn. ii) You are involved in the production of juice. Prepare a promotion programme for the business.



## KITHUFU QUALITY JUICE

P.O BOX 98, LUWERO

TEL. 0789456743

|                        |
|------------------------|
| PROMOTION<br>PROGRAMME |
|------------------------|

| DATE                                                   | ACTIVITY                                                                                                                                  | PERSON IN CHARGE | REMARKS |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|---------|
| 3 <sup>st</sup> – 6 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019   | Determining who the target customers are in terms of age, sex, habits, culture, education and location.<br><br>Carrying out market survey | Sales Manager    |         |
| 7 <sup>th</sup> – 9 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019   | Determining the unique features of the juice in terms of quality, shape, packaging, price etc                                             | Sales Manager    |         |
| 10 <sup>th</sup> -14 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019  | Constructing a business positioning strategy                                                                                              | Sales Manager    |         |
| 15 <sup>th</sup> - 16 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019 | Determining the best message to communicate the honey product to target buyers.<br><br>Establishing the unique selling proposition (USP)  | Sales Manager    |         |
| 17 <sup>th</sup> -18 <sup>th</sup><br>August,<br>2019  | Determining production and advertising options and their costs in terms                                                                   | Sales Manager    |         |

|  |                                                        |  |  |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
|  | of available target.<br>Designing a promotional budget |  |  |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------|--|--|

Prepared by .....

.....

WAMBOZO JOSEPH  
JOHNSON

SALES MANAGER  
MANAGER

Approved by

MAWOWOLO

GENERAL

## 5. PROGRAMME FOR OBTAINING LOAN FUNDS

This shows the procedure of obtaining loan funds from financial institutions.

Qn. You own a fruit processing plant and you are in the process of purchasing a mixing machine for the factory. Prepare a programme for obtaining a loan to invest in the

business.

# KITHUFU QUALITY JUICE

P.O BOX 98, LUWERO

TEL. 0789456743

## PROGRAMME FOR OBTAINING A LOAN

| DATE       | ACTIVITY                                                                                      | PERSON IN CHARGE     | REMARKS |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------|
| 3 / 9/2019 | Identifying the reason for obtaining the loan                                                 | Financial controller |         |
| 4/9/ 2019  | Developing a business plan                                                                    | Financial controller |         |
| 5/9/2019   | Developing a plan to show how the business will be financed and the possible funding sources. | Financial controller |         |
| 6/9/2019   | Identifying and approaching the preferred financiers.                                         | Financial controller |         |
| 7/9/2019   | Obtaining terms and conditions for the loan                                                   | Financial controller |         |
| 8/9/2019   | Comparing the loan terms and conditions with those of the financiers                          | Financial controller |         |
| 9/9/2019   | Checking the business plan to establish the implication of the loan to the business.          | Financial controller |         |
| 10/9/2019  | Starting discussions with                                                                     | Financial controller |         |

|           |                                                                          |                      |  |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--|
|           | the chosen financiers                                                    |                      |  |
| 12/9/2019 | Obtaining the loan and using it for the intended purpose and accordingly | Financial controller |  |

Prepared by .....

.....

WAMBOZO JOSEPH  
JOHNSON

SALES MANAGER  
MANAGER

Approved by

BWENDA

GENERAL

## 6. CREDIT RECOVERY PROGRAMME

This is followed to endure recovery of the debtors from debtors.

Qn. You are the financial manager of a micro finance business operating in your home town. Draw a credit recovery programme you are to ensure proper recovery of the debts.

## KAMPALA MICRO FINANCE

P.O BOX 98319, KAMPALA

TEL. 0789-453453

## CREDIT RECOVERY PROGRAMME

| DATE       | ACTIVITY                                                                                                                            | PERSON IN CHARGE     | REMARKS |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------|
| 3 / 9/2019 | Identifying all credit customers and collecting all records of debtors.                                                             | Financial controller |         |
| 4/9/ 2019  | Arranging the debtors' records according to credit period and assessment and allocation of responsible persons to credit customers. | Financial controller |         |
| 5/9/2019   | Preparing and dispatching debt reminders to debtors or calling the debtors on phone.                                                | Financial controller |         |
| 6/9/2019   | Collecting payments and updating debtors' records.                                                                                  | Financial controller |         |
| 7/9/2019   | Issuing statements of accounts.                                                                                                     | Financial controller |         |
| 8/9/2019   | Sending last reminders to debtors who have defaulted.                                                                               | General manager      |         |
| 9/9/2019   | Compiling and publishing                                                                                                            | Financial controller |         |

|           |                                                                                             |                                                |  |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|--|
|           | defaulters and giving them final date to clear.                                             |                                                |  |
| 10/9/2019 | Taking legal action on defaulters e.g. auctioning collateral security and factoring debtors | Company secretary<br>Lawyer<br>General manager |  |

Prepared by .....

NJWAJWA SALIVA  
SALES MANAGER  
MANAGER

Approved by

BYENDA JACKSON  
GENERAL

## 7. LAUNCHING PROGRAMME

This is followed when officially introducing business products to the general public.

Qn. You have started a juice processing business. Develop a programme for launching

your enterprise.

# KITHUFU QUALITY JUICE

P.O BOX 98, LUWERO

TEL. 0789456743

## LAUNCHING PROGRAMME

DATE : 12<sup>th</sup> JANUARY 2019

TIME : 1:00PM – 7:00PM

DAY: MONDAY

VENUE: FACTORY PREMISES.

| DATE          | ACTIVITY                                                               | PERSON IN CHARGE   | REMARKS |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------|
| 1:00pm-2:00pm | Installing musical instruments and organizing the venue                | Chief organizers   |         |
| 2:00-2:30pm   | Welcoming people to the launch and giving opening remarks              | Master of ceremony |         |
| 2:30- 3:00pm  | Leading in the prayers, anthems and introducing the different visitors | Master of ceremony |         |
| 3:00- 3:30pm  | Introducing the products dealt into to the people and displaying them  | Sales manager      |         |
| 3:30- 3:45    | Music interlude                                                        | Music DJ           |         |
| 3:45pm-4:10pm | Allowing people to ask questions                                       | Sales manager      |         |
| 4:10pm-4:40pm | Organizing prize winning raffles and giving free gifts to people       | Sales manager      |         |

|                   |                                                   |                  |  |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------------------|--|
| 4:42pm-<br>5:00pm | Selling sample products at a<br>discounted price. | Sales<br>manager |  |
| 5:00- 5:15pm      | Music                                             | Music DJ         |  |

Prepared by .....

WAMBOZO JOSEPH  
JOHNSON  
  
SALES MANAGER  
MANAGER

Approved by

BWENDA

GENERAL

## 8. TRAINING PROGRAMME.

This varies and it depends on what the training is about.

Qn. You own a motor vehicle washing bay operating in Kasese. Draw a one day programme for sensitization and training workshop intended to improve service delivery



in KIKII MOTORS WASHING BAY.

### KIIKII MOTORS WASHING BAY

P.O BOX 981, Kasese

TEL. 0789411143

#### PROGRAMME FOR TRAINING AND SENSITISATION WORKSHOP

DUE TO TAKE PLACE ON 8<sup>th</sup> MAY 2019 AT THE WASHING  
BAY

| TIME    | ACTIVITY                                                                      | PERSON IN CHARGE       | REMARKS |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|---------|
| 8:00am  | Preparing the venue                                                           | Human Resource Manager |         |
| 9:00am  | Registering and assembling of participants                                    | Human Resource Manager |         |
| 9:30am  | Singing anthems and saying prayer                                             | DJ and Pastor          |         |
| 10:00am | Giving opening and welcoming remarks                                          | Master of Ceremonies   |         |
| 10:30am | Introduction of participants                                                  | All participants       |         |
| 10:40am | Presentation and demonstration by facilitators and discussions and reactions. | facilitators           |         |
| 11:00am | Tea break                                                                     | All participants       |         |
| 12:05am | Field trip and practical application of the skills                            | All trainees           |         |

|        |                                                |                               |  |
|--------|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
|        | by the trainees/<br>participants               |                               |  |
| 1:30pm | Awarding of certificates                       | Managing director             |  |
| 2:00pm | Closing remarks, closing<br>prayer and anthems | Participants and facilitators |  |

Prepared by .....

.....

LAURA MBUGO

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER  
MANAGER

Approved by

EMIBIRU HARUNA

GENERAL

BUWOOMA DELICIOUS JUICE

P.O BOX 234, KYOTERA

TEL: 0759748844

**PROGRAMME FOR DETERMINING PROFITABILITY OF  
BUSINESS**

| TIME    | ACTIVITY                           | PERSON IN CHARGE   | REMARKS |
|---------|------------------------------------|--------------------|---------|
| 8:00am  | Deciding the type of business      | General Manager    |         |
| 9:00am  | Choosing location of the business  | Operations Manager |         |
| 9:30am  | Forecasting sales of the business  | Financial manager  |         |
| 10:00am | Estimating costs of the business   | Financial manager  |         |
| 10:30am | Estimating profits of the business | Financial manager  |         |

Prepared by .....  
.....

Approved by

LAURA MBU  
HARUNA

EMIBIRU

FINANCIAL MANAGER  
MANAGER

GENERAL

xvii. Training programme

This varies and depends on what the training is about.

## WELCOME RESTAURANT

P.O BOX 23, NAMASUBA

|                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>TRAINING PROGRAM FOR EMPLOYEES OF WELCOME<br/>RESTAURANT</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|

| DATE            | ACTIVITY                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | PERSON IN CHARGE       | remarks |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|---------|
| Mon 20/10/2019  | <p>..Preparing and assembling of participants</p> <p>.. Singing anthems and saying prayers</p> <p>..Introduction of participants</p> <p>..Giving opening and welcoming remarks</p> <p>.. Explaining the objectives of training.</p> | Human resource manager |         |
| Tues 21/10/2019 | Discussing the causes of poor quality foods in the evening                                                                                                                                                                          | Employees              |         |
| Wed 22/10/2019  | Explaining importance and ways of ensuring quality in an enterprise                                                                                                                                                                 | General manager        |         |
| Thur 23/10/2019 | Field trip and practical application of the skills by the trainees                                                                                                                                                                  | Quality controller     |         |
| Fri 24/10/2019  | Awarding certificates                                                                                                                                                                                                               | All participants       |         |

Submitted by,

Signature:.....

KAMWA MOUTH.

Approved by;.....

Signature:.....

Title: .....

## 24. SCHEDULES

### SCHEDULES.

These are prepared or designed to show activities which are done on a regular basis. A schedule shows how the activity is to be done and the personnel in-charge of doing it.

Schedules can be for one day (day's daily) and if this is the case, the first column becomes time. Schedules taking more days i.e. weekly the first column is day not date.

#### 1. SUPPLY/ DISTRIBUTION/ MARKETING SCHEDULE.

This shows how goods are to be distributed. It may be daily or day's to cover only one day or weekly to cover a full week.

Qn. You are a proprietor of a business dealing in sale of beauty products. Draw a day's distribution schedule for your products.

|                                                                                                                                         |                         |          |          |                     |                   |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------|----------|---------------------|-------------------|---------|
| <b>BEAUTY BEAUTY CARE</b><br><b>P.O BOX 234, KOTIDO</b><br><b>TEL: 0784-345678</b>                                                      |                         |          |          |                     |                   |         |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;"> <b>DAY'S DISTRIBUTION<br/>SCHEDULE</b> </div> |                         |          |          |                     |                   |         |
| <b>DAY: SATURDAY</b><br><b>DATE: 23th April, 2019</b>                                                                                   |                         |          |          |                     |                   |         |
| time                                                                                                                                    | Place/ agent/<br>market | product  | Quantity | Person in<br>charge | Delivery<br>means | Remarks |
| 7:00am                                                                                                                                  | Kampala                 | Soap     | 10 boxes | Driver              | Company           |         |
| 9:00am                                                                                                                                  | Lukaaya                 | Lotion   | 30 boxes | Driver              | van               |         |
| 10:00am                                                                                                                                 | Masaka                  | Jellies  | 10 boxes | Driver              | van               |         |
| 11:00am                                                                                                                                 | Kyotera                 | Perfumes | 28 boxes | Driver              | Van               |         |
|                                                                                                                                         |                         |          |          |                     | Van               |         |

|        |          |          |          |        |     |  |
|--------|----------|----------|----------|--------|-----|--|
| 1:00am | Mutukula | perfumes | 15 boxes | Driver | van |  |
|--------|----------|----------|----------|--------|-----|--|

Prepared by,.....  
 BY,.....  
 SALES MANAGER

APPROVED  
  
 GENERAL MANAGER

## ii. VEHICLE TRAVEL SCHEDULE

This shows how the business vehicles are to move to different part. It applies to a transport business.

Qn. You are operating a business dealing in tour and travel with three buses having a capacity of 50 passengers. Prepare a weekly travel schedule for the three buses.

## JJAGWE BUS TRANSPORTERS

P.O BOX 123, MUKONO

TEL: 0782-772343

WEEKLY TRAVEL  
SCHEDULE

| DAY       | VEHICLE NO | FROM    | TO       | DRIVERS' NAME | DEPARTURE TIME | COSTS  | REMARKS |
|-----------|------------|---------|----------|---------------|----------------|--------|---------|
| Monday    | UAQ 234K   | Kampala | Kasese   | Kakoko        | 6:00am         | 50,000 |         |
| Tuesday   | UAR 125D   | Kampala | Gulu     | Kabaata       | 7:00am         | 65,000 |         |
| Wednesday | UAS 348M   | Kampala | Mbale    | Kabuzi        | 9:00am         | 45,000 |         |
| Thursday  | UAW 125D   | Kampala | Mutukula | Kabizzi       | 4:00pm         | 30,000 |         |
| Friday    | UAR 348Z   | Kampala | Isingiro | Kakwale       | 1:00am         | 41,000 |         |
| Saturday  | UAM 125D   | Kampala | Nairobi  | Kayaza        | 10:00am        | 39,000 |         |
| Sunday    | UAB 234K   | Kampala | Congo    | Kajjonjo      | 2:00pm         | 47,000 |         |

Prepared by, .....

by,.....

Kakutiya Polythene

TRANSPORT OFFICER

Approved

GENERAL MANAGER

### 3. VEHICLE SERVICE SCHEDULE.

This shows the date when the vehicle is to be serviced.

Qn. Design a vehicle service schedule for your company taxis.

**KASOLO TRANSPORTERS**

**P.O BOX 234, LUSOLO**

**TEL: 0756-345611**

|                                     |
|-------------------------------------|
| <b>VEHICLE SERVICE<br/>SCHEDULE</b> |
|-------------------------------------|

| VEHICLE NO. | SERVICE DATE/<br>MILAGE | NATURE<br>OF SERVICE | Person in charge | Remarks |
|-------------|-------------------------|----------------------|------------------|---------|
| 7:00am      | Kampala                 | Soap                 | Driver           |         |
| 9:00am      | Lukaaya                 | Lotion               | Driver           |         |
| 10:00am     | Masaka                  | Jellies              | Driver           |         |
| 11:00am     | Kyotera                 | Perfumes             | Driver           |         |
| 1:00am      | Mutukula                | perfumes             | Driver           |         |

Signed by,.....

TRANSPORT OFFICER

### 4. BUS TICKET.

This is usually given to bus customers on payment of the travel fares.



|                                                                                                                        |                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>KASOLO TRANSPORTERS</b><br><b>P.O BOX 234, LUSOLO</b><br><b>TEL: 0756-345611</b>                                    |                      |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;"> <b>BUS<br/>TICKET</b> </div> |                      |
| SEAT NO. ....                                                                                                          | DATE:.....           |
| JOURNEY DETAILS:    FROM.....                      TO.....                                                             |                      |
| AMOUNT PAID: SHS.....                                                                                                  |                      |
| BUS NO: .....                                                                                                          | DRIVER'S NAME: ..... |
| SIGNATURE: _____                                                                                                       |                      |
| Fares once paid are not refundable.                                                                                    |                      |

##### 5. PRODUCTION SCHEDULE.

This shows the quantity to be produced during different days within the business.

Qn. You are operating a beverage processing plant. Prepare a weekly production schedule for your business.

## LOZAKO SNACKS

P.O BOX 784, LUSOLO

TEL: 0756-345611

|                     |
|---------------------|
| PRODUCTION SCHEDULE |
|---------------------|

| DAY       | PRODUCT | QUANTITY    | Person in charge    | Remarks |
|-----------|---------|-------------|---------------------|---------|
| Monday    | Wine    | 2000 litres | Kiyenje             |         |
| Tuesday   | Wine    | 4000 litres | cockroach           |         |
| Wednesday | Wine    | 4800 litre  | Kisanyi caterpillar |         |
| Thursday  | Wine    | 3200 litres | Kawukumu            |         |
| Friday    | Wine    | 2340 litres | Kaku                |         |
| Saturday  | Wine    | 7000 litres | Kavunza             |         |
| Sunday    | Wine    | 1230 litres | Kasekere            |         |
|           |         |             | katunkuma           |         |

Prepared by,.....

Tankaka

PRODUCTION MANAGER

Approved by, .....

GATU FRANK

GENERAL MANAGER

## 6. LOAN REPAYMENT SCHEDULE

This is prepared to act as a guide when the business is paying back loan funds or debtors paying the business in case it is a micro finance. Loan repayment schedule may be done using fixed installment or using the reducing/ diminishing balance method

Qn. i) You have received a loan of shs. 6,000,000 from Barclays Bank to expand your hotel business. You have been granted a credit period of 6 years at an annual interest rate of 6% payable in 6 equal installments using the fixed installment method, prepare a loan repayment schedule.

**SUPREME HOTEL**

P.O BOX 232, LIRA

TEL: 0321456783

**LOAN REPAYMENT  
SCHEDULE**

**LOAN AMOUNT:** Shs. 6,000,000

**INTEREST RATE:** 6% ON FIXED INSTALLMENT METHOD

**BANK OF BARODA**

| PERIOD       | PRINCIPAL<br>SHS | INTEREST<br>SHS  | TOTAL<br>REPAYMENT<br>SHS | PRINCIPAL<br>OUTSTANDING<br>BALANCES<br>SHS | TOTAL<br>OUTSTANDING<br>BALANCE<br>SHS |
|--------------|------------------|------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Year 1       | 1,000,000        | 360,000          | 2,360,000                 | 5,000,000                                   | 6,800,000                              |
| Year 2       | 1,000,000        | 360,000          | 2,360,000                 | 4,000,000                                   | 5,440,000                              |
| Year 3       | 1,000,000        | 360,000          | 2,360,000                 | 3,000,000                                   | 4,080,000                              |
| Year 4       | 1,000,000        | 360,000          | 2,360,000                 | 2,000,000                                   | 2,720,000                              |
| Year 5       | 1,000,000        | 360,000          | 2,360,000                 | 1,000,000                                   | 1,360,000                              |
| Year 6       | 1,000,000        | 360,000          | 2,360,000                 | 0                                           | 0                                      |
| <b>TOTAL</b> | <b>6,000,000</b> | <b>2,160,000</b> | <b>8,160,000</b>          |                                             |                                        |

Qn. ii) You have obtained a loan of shs. 20,000,000 from Centenary bank to expand your clays industry. The loan is payable in 5 equal monthly installments at an interest rate of

10% on reducing balance method. Prepare a loan repayment schedule.

Note: The interest rate reduces depending on the outstanding balance.

| <p style="text-align: center;">SUPER STAY CLAYS</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P.O BOX 232, MUBENDE</p> <p style="text-align: center;">TEL: 0322-346783</p> |                  |                 |                           |                                             |                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px auto; width: 200px;"> <b>LOAN REPAYMENT<br/>SCHEDULE</b> </div>             |                  |                 |                           |                                             |                                        |
| <p>LOAN AMOUNT:    Shs. 20,000,000</p> <p>INTEREST RATE:    10% ON FIXED INSTALLMENT METHOD</p> <p style="text-align: center;">BANK OF BARODA</p>               |                  |                 |                           |                                             |                                        |
| PERIOD                                                                                                                                                          | PRINCIPAL<br>SHS | INTEREST<br>SHS | TOTAL<br>REPAYMENT<br>SHS | PRINCIPAL<br>OUTSTANDING<br>BALANCES<br>SHS | TOTAL<br>OUTSTANDING<br>BALANCE<br>SHS |
| 1 <sup>st</sup> month                                                                                                                                           | 6,000,000        | 4,000,000       | 2,000,000                 | 16,000,000                                  | 6,800,000                              |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> month                                                                                                                                           | 5,600,000        | 4,000,000       | 1,600,000                 | 12,000,000                                  | 5,440,000                              |
| 3 <sup>rd</sup> month                                                                                                                                           | 5,200,000        | 4,000,000       | 1,200,000                 | 8,000,000                                   | 4,080,000                              |
| 4 <sup>th</sup> month                                                                                                                                           | 4,800,000        | 4,000,000       | 800,000                   | 4,000,000                                   | 2,720,000                              |
| 5 <sup>th</sup> month                                                                                                                                           | 4,400,000        | 4,000,000       | 400,000                   | 0                                           | 1,360,000                              |
| TOTAL                                                                                                                                                           | 26,000,000       | 20,000,000      | 6,000,000                 |                                             |                                        |

## 7. WORK SCHEDULE

This shows the work distribution time table for workers. It shows who is to do what and when. It can be drawn for one day or a full week.

Qn. i) You are the production manager of Come and buy processing factory. Prepare a weekly work schedule for your employees.

| BUY BEST JUICES<br>P.O BOX 99, KAWEMPE<br>TEL: 0783-4578869<br><div>WEEKLY WORK SCHEDULE</div> |                |           |                      |            |          |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------|----------------------|------------|----------|---------|
| DAY                                                                                            | EMPLOYEE NAME  | EMPLOY NO | DESCRIPTION WORK     | START TIME | END TIME | REMARKS |
| Monday                                                                                         | Nsiri Tracy    | 01        | Extracting juice     | 7:00am     | 8:50am   |         |
|                                                                                                | Nsowera Tom    | 02        | Mixing               | 9:00am     | 10:55am  |         |
|                                                                                                | Njuki susan    | 03        | Filtering            | 11:00am    | 12:50pm  |         |
|                                                                                                | Kiyenje Herman | 04        | Packaging            | 1:00pm     | 4:50pm   |         |
| Tuesday                                                                                        | Kiku Lawrence  | 05        | Distributing         | 8:00am     | 5:00pm   |         |
|                                                                                                | Nsenene Dan    | 06        | Extracting juice     | 7:00am     | 10:00am  |         |
|                                                                                                |                | 03        | Mixing               | 10:15am    | 11:55am  |         |
|                                                                                                | Njuki sam      | 04        | Filtering            | 12:00pm    |          |         |
|                                                                                                | Kiyenje Herman | 07        | Packaging            | 2:30pm     | 2:00pm   |         |
|                                                                                                | Njaga James    |           |                      |            | 5:50pm   |         |
| Wednesday                                                                                      | Kiku Lawrence  | 05        | Distribution         | 8:00am     | 8:00pm   |         |
| Thursday                                                                                       | Nsiri Tracy    | 01        | Extracting juice     | 8:00am     | 10:00am  |         |
|                                                                                                | Nsowera        | 02        | Mixing and filtering | 10:30am    |          |         |

|          |                  |    |                            |         |                  |  |
|----------|------------------|----|----------------------------|---------|------------------|--|
|          | Tom<br>Njuki San | 03 | Packaging                  | 1:30pm  | 1:00pm<br>5:50pm |  |
| Friday   | Kiyenje Herman   | 04 | Extracting Juice           | 8:00am  | 9:50am           |  |
|          | Kiku Lawrence    | 05 | Mixing and filtering       | 10:00am | 12:30p<br>m      |  |
|          | Njaga James      | 07 | packaging                  | 12:50pm | 4:50pm           |  |
|          | Nsiri Tracy      | 01 | Distribution               | 8:00am  | 8:00pm           |  |
| Saturday | Nsoera Tom       | 02 | Extracting juice           | 7:00am  | 10:00a<br>m      |  |
|          | Njuki Sam        | 03 | Mixing and faltering       | 10:00am | 1:30am           |  |
|          | Kiyenje Sam      | 04 | Packaging                  | 2:00am  | 5:30pm           |  |
|          | Nsenene Dan      | 06 | Distribution               | 8:00am  | 8:00pm           |  |
| Sunday   | Kiku Lawrence    | 05 | Extracting and<br>mixing   | 7:00am  | 11:00p<br>m      |  |
|          | Njaga James      | 07 | Filtering and<br>packaging | 11:30am | 5:00pm           |  |
|          | Nsenene Dan      | 06 | distribution               | 9:00am  | 6:00pm           |  |
|          |                  |    |                            |         |                  |  |

Prepared by .....

BWENDA TIMOTHY

PRODUCTION MANAGER

## 8. MASTER DAILY WORK SCHEDULE.

This is used by an entrepreneur with many workers to show the daily work distribution time table to all workers. It may be for one day (daily) or full week (weekly).

Qn. ii) You are operating a construction company with many workers. Draw a Master daily work schedule for your workers.

## TUKOLE CONSTRUCTORS LIMITED

P.O BOX 342, APAC

TEL: 0794-674532

|                                       |
|---------------------------------------|
| <b>MASTER DAILY WORK<br/>SCHEDULE</b> |
|---------------------------------------|

| CUSTOMER NAME | DESCRIPTION OF WORK           | EMPLOYEE NUMBER | START TIME | WORK ORDER NO. | REMARKS |
|---------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|------------|----------------|---------|
| Kaviiri       | Repair the west side fence    | 1               | 8:30am     | 3457           |         |
| Katwe         | Wiring of lights at drive way | 2               | 8:47am     | 3458           |         |
| Kenda         | Repair in front of the house  | 3               | 11:00am    | 3459           |         |
| Kagere        | Fill holes in drive way       | 1               | 9:15am     | 3454           |         |
| Kakono        | Install new hot water tank    | 2               | 10:54am    | 3461           |         |
| Tutuu.        | Set tiles near bathroom sink  | 3               | 6:30am     | 3463           |         |

Prepared by,.....

LUFOTOSE EDDY

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER

Approved by, .....

MMESE RATZ

GENERAL MANAGER

**9. DAILY WORK SCHEDULE.**

This is drawn by the entrepreneur who works for him/ herself indicating the day's work time table to serve his/ her customers.

Qn. You own a clinic. Draw a daily work schedule you are to follow when serving your customers.

## BAWONA CLINIC

P.O BOX 342, APAC

TEL: 0794-674532

## DAILY WORK SCHEDULE

| CUSTOMER NAME | Address   | TELEPHONE  | START TIME | END TIME | REFERENCE | REMARKS |
|---------------|-----------|------------|------------|----------|-----------|---------|
| Kaviiri       | Kakuuto   | 0701948493 | 8:30am     | 10:00AM  | 3457      |         |
| Katwe         | Ssanje    | 0341283746 | 8:47am     | 1:00PM   | 3458      |         |
| Kenda         | Mutukula  | 0784362888 | 11:00am    | 5:00PM   | 3459      |         |
| Kagere        | Kibaale   | 0765493922 | 9:15am     | 4:00PM   | 3454      |         |
| Kakono        | Kalisizo  | 0704444483 | 10:54am    | 3:00PM   | 3461      |         |
| Tutuu.        | Kasensero | 0772345736 | 6:30am     | 10:00PM  | 3463      |         |

Prepared by,.....

LUFOTOSE EDDY

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER

Approved by, .....

MMESE RATZ

GENERAL MANAGER

**25. SOCIAL ENTREPRENEURSHIP**

It involves the following;

- i. GEPIC structure for advocacy
- ii. Programme for becoming a social entrepreneur
- iii. Programme for the bridge the gap approach ( visionary approach)



- iv. Root cause analysis
- v. Theory of change
- vi. Components of a social enterprise plan
- vii. Opportunity identification.

### 1. GEPIC STRUCTURE FOR ADVOCACY

This involves speaking and writing to others to spread ideas, innovative strategies so as to promote a social mission and thereafter recruit support.

GEPIC stands for Greet, Engage, Problem, Inform and Call to action.

Example. 1.

You have decided to establish a social enterprise aimed at promoting public health. Draft a GEPIC structure for advocacy for promoting your mission.

TEAM NO GARBAGE ENTERPRISE

P.O BOX 20, KAMPALA

TEL :0782779140

#### GEPIC STRUCTURE FOR ADVOCACY

Greetings.

Our Chief Guest, Invited Guests and community Members present, I greet you all.

Engage.

Last week, I went to Mulago hospital and I was informed that roughly 20 people per week have been dying of poor hygiene and sanitation related diseases such as dysentery, diarrhea and cholera among others. This shows that our hygiene and sanitation are still lacking but remember health is wealth.

Problem.

From the analysis made, we have come to realize that poor health is as a result of improper garbage disposal.

Inform.

As concerned community members, we have come up with a project to fight against the poor health in our community. We have put up public rubbish pits in the community to eradicate the

improper disposal of waste.

Call for action.

We kindly request for your co-operation as we work towards saving the lives of people. Thank you.

## **2. PROGRAMME FOR BECOMING A SOCIAL ENTREPRENEUR.**

This is composed of the steps taken for one to become a social entrepreneur.

Example:

You are planning to establish a social enterprise aimed at addressing the dangers of deforestation. Draft a programme for becoming a social entrepreneur.

Solution.

A program for becoming a social entrepreneur.

| <p style="text-align: center;"><b>EVER GREEN ENVIRONMENT FORUM</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>P.O BOX 345, KYOTERA</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>TEL: 07831775</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b><u>PROGRAMME FOR BECOMING A SOCIAL ENTREPRENEUR</u></b></p> |                                                       |                  |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------|---------|
| DATE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | ACTIVITY                                              | PERSON IN CHARGE | REMARKS |
| 3/6/19                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Developing an idea for becoming a social entrepreneur | Kabaata Duck     |         |
| 5/6/19                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Discovering the vision, passion and skills            | Kabaata Duck     |         |
| 6/6/19                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Identifying opportunities in the community            | Kabaata Duck     |         |
| 8/6/19                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Matching the vision with the community opportunities  | Nkoko Chicken    |         |
| 10/6/19                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Acting and spreading change                           | Kabaata Duck     |         |
| 13/6/19                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Mobilizing resources                                  | Kabaata Duck     |         |

|                                                                                      |                                      |                                                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| 15/6/19                                                                              | Constructing needed buildings        | Mbwa Tom                                                             |  |
| 15/6/19                                                                              | Recruiting workers                   | Kigere Foot                                                          |  |
| 16/10/19                                                                             | Launching the enterprise             | Kabaata Duck                                                         |  |
| 18/10/19                                                                             | Starting operation of the enterprise | Kabaata Duck & Nkoko Chicken                                         |  |
| Drafted by;<br><br>Sign:<br><br>Name: Kabaata Duck<br><br>Tittle: OPERATIONS MANAGER |                                      | Approved by;<br><br>sign:_____<br><br>Name:_____<br><br>Tittle:_____ |  |

### 3. PROGRAM FOR THE BRIDGE THE GAP APPROACH (VISIONARY APPROACH)

| EVER GREEN ENVIRONMENT FORUM<br><br>P.O BOX 345, KYOTERA<br><br>TEL: 07831775<br><br><u>PROGRAMME FOR THE BRIDGE THE GAP APPROACH</u> |                                         |                  |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------|---------|
| DATE                                                                                                                                  | ACTIVITY                                | PERSON IN CHARGE | REMARKS |
| 3/6/19                                                                                                                                | Defining the vision                     | Kabaata Duck     |         |
| 5/6/19                                                                                                                                | Examining the current reality           | Kabaata Duck     |         |
| 6/6/19                                                                                                                                | Identifying and acknowledging the gap   | Kabaata Duck     |         |
| 8/6/19                                                                                                                                | Selecting action steps to close the gap | Nkoko Chicken    |         |
| 10/6/19                                                                                                                               | Identifying resources required          | Kabaata Duck     |         |
| 13/6/19                                                                                                                               | Setting priorities                      | Kabaata Duck     |         |

|                            |                                              |                              |  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| 15/6/19                    | Choosing who is countable for what           | Mbwa Tom                     |  |
| 15/6/19                    | Getting commitment from the concerned people | Kigere Foot                  |  |
| 16/10/19                   | Agreeing on the start and end time           | Kabaata Duck                 |  |
| 18/10/19                   | Getting started                              | Kabaata Duck & Nkoko Chicken |  |
| Drafted by;                |                                              | Approved by;                 |  |
| Sign:                      |                                              | sign:_____                   |  |
| Name: Kabaata Duck         |                                              | Name:_____                   |  |
| Tittle: OPERATIONS MANAGER |                                              | Tittle:_____                 |  |

#### **4. ROOT CAUSE ANALYSIS.**

This is aimed at establishing the primary cause of the problem so as to get a solution.

Example 4. You have established a social enterprise to fight unemployment problem in your locality. Develop a root cause analysis for unemployment.

Solution. Root cause analysis for unemployment

**Statement of the problem.** Unemployment

**This is caused by;** -lack of required skills  
-laziness  
-ignorance about existing jobs

**Why?** Poor curriculum designed for learners

**Why?** Lack of monitoring of the curriculum by Ministry official

**Why?** Poor education system/ policies

**Root cause:** Poor education system/ policies

**Necessary action steps to be taken.** Vocationalisation of education  
Developing a good monitoring system for education

institution

**Implementing the best solution:**

- Undertaking skills development to encourage people set up business projects rather than seeking for jobs.

### 5. THEORY OF CHANGE.

This consists of elements than can be used to realize the end goal.

Example 5. You have established a social enterprise dealing in a manufacture of furniture using less timber so as to fight deforestation. Present a theory of change for your business.

Solution. Theory of change for timber save furniture workshop

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>SAVE FURNITURE WORKSHOP</b><br><br><b>P.O BOX 345, KYOTERA</b><br><br><b>TEL: 07831775</b><br><br><u><b>THEORY OF CHANGE.</b></u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>VISION</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | To be the top manufacturers of high quality furniture in Uganda.                                                                                                     |
| <b>IMPACT</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Manufacturing of high quality furniture reduces the need for replacing furniture and economizes the materials needed including timber so as to save the environment. |
| <b>OUTCOME</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | the number of desks, tables and furniture in the surrounding scholls, hotel and homesteads.                                                                          |
| <b>ACTIVITIES</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Sourcing for high quality timber planning and smoothing the timber, ensuring quality finishing and varnishing, ensure proper display and storage                     |
| <b>INPUTS</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | These include timber, machinery, human resource (people), financial resources (money) and information resources (knowledgeable)                                      |
| Drafted by;<br><br><div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;">           Sign:<br/><br/>           Name: Kabaata Duck<br/><br/>           Tittle: OPERATIONS MANAGER         </div> <div style="width: 45%;">           sign: _____<br/><br/>           Name: _____<br/><br/>           Tittle: _____         </div> </div> |                                                                                                                                                                      |

### 6. COMPONENTS OF A SOCIAL ENTERPRISE PLAN.

EXAMPLLE: Y ou have established a social enterprise to fight Malaria.

Develop; (i) an innovation to address the issue.

(ii) Management and operation section of your social enterprise plan.

(iii) Opportunity section of the social enterprises plan.

Solution.

- i) An innovation includes
  - Root cause analysis
  - Solution /product description
  - Innovation matrix.
- ii) Management and operations section of the social enterprise plan includes;
  - Management and responsibilities
  - Delivery of products and operation of activities
  - Timeline
  - Strategic partners
  - Impact on society
  - Impact on environment
- iii) Sustainability section of the social enterprise plan include;
  - Budget renewal of resources/ profit making
  - Start up funding strategy
  - Profit management
- iv) The opportunity section of the social enterprise plan includes;
  - Impact area
  - Current reality research
  - Impact potential
  - Resources and financials of the opportunity.

Note: practically prepare and write about the mentioned components.

## **7. OPPORTUNITY IDENTIFICATION**

This involves determination of the social challenges at a particular time which the social entrepreneur seeks to address. It should be repeated time to time so as to obtain the new social concerns affecting people.

Example.

You are planning to set up a social enterprise to address the most challenging social concern.

Perform an opportunity identification exercise.

1. Define the impact area
  - Who are the customers; who are the most vulnerable, disadvantaged and ignored?
  - Where will you work and what is the area of the most need or with the highest number of targets.
2. Research the current reality.
  - What do you have to start with?
  - Mention the obstacles to making your vision a reality
  - What is new in your community i.e. new attitudes, interests, activities, connections, technologies etc.

- What is available in the impact area.
  - Current strategies being used and enterprises there i.e. Assets or strengths, Threats, Problems/needs, Recent changes, Current solutions/ products.
3. Brainstorm/ products.
- How could you be resourceful with what is available in this impact area.
  - Why is the current reality the way it is.
  - How can a good reality be spread or increased.
  - How different will you act to achieve your vision i.e. building resources, ways of spreading impact, root cause of threats/ problems, ways to innovate...
4. List the resources and finances.
- What do you need to turn the impact potential ideas into reality?
  - Do you have the required skills and experience? Who does?
  - What new things would increase positive impact or make it more sustainable.
  - What are the available resources?
  - What products are missing in the community
  - Would people buy products if they are available?
  - Is it affordable?
  - Is there any way of cutting costs or change the delivery of products for greater impact i.e. resource requirements, available resources, profit potential, renewable resources.

### **FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT**

Financial management deals with the procurement of funds and their effective utilization in order to achieve financial objectives of the business.

Objectives of financial management

- To create wealth for the business
- To generate cash for the business
- To provide an adequate return on investment
- To Satisfy stake holders
- For growth

#### **Importance of financial management**

Finance is the life blood of the business organization, therefore each business must maintain adequate amount of finances for the business running and activities.

#### **The importance includes;**

- Financial planning, financial management helps to determine the financial requirement of the business.
- Acquisition of funds, this involves getting the required business funds by tapping the possible sources with least cost.
- It ensures proper usage of funds, by spending the acquired funds on activities

that increase the value of the firm's asset.

It helps in making financial decisions in the business. Foreexample the usage of funds, investment which may affect the entire business.

It's used to increase profitability of the business, through ensuring proper budgeting and regular analysis of profits every time.

It helps management to assess the business performance, this is based on returns on investment, financial utilization etc.

It helps the business to compare performance of the business, by use of ratios analysis.

## **SOURCES OF FINANCES**

The term finance is defined as the art and science of managing money.

Business finance is defined as the activity concerned with planning, raising, controlling and administering of the funds used in the business.

Sources include;

### **OWN SOURCE**

This includes personal income savings that one can use to start a business.

#### **Advantages**

It allows an entrepreneur to make independent personal decisions on where to invest the fund and what to do with the profits realized.

It has no extra cost e.g. no interest is paid for the use of funds.

The entrepreneur has complete control over the benefits arising from the investment.

It is associated with self discipline e.g. saving more and earn more

The source has no strings attached.

#### **Disadvantages**

It takes long period of time to realize substantial amount of money.

It can promote extravagance since the entrepreneur has on external control.

It's difficult to distinguish personal income and business capital, this retard the growth of business.

### **SUPPLY CREDIT**

This is where the supplier offers goods on credit and collects cash later after selling.

#### **Advantages**

It ensures that the business is constantly supplied with raw materials

It promotes good relation between the company and the business receiving credit.

The supplying company gets a lot of profits since goods sold on credit are always highly priced.

It helps those entrepreneurs without capital to start business.

It promotes self discipline since credit payment need hard work and honesty.

It increases market for supplying the company.



### **Disadvantages**

It's associated with high cost of recovering credit.

It may lead to bad relationship since incase the credit is not cleared.

In case of demand fall, the suppliers register great losses.

It limits consumer choice

It increases the cost of doing business

It leads to buying goods of low quality goods or services. This makes buyer to make losses.

### **FAMILY SOURCE OF FINANCE**

This include the use of family property,family savings used to start a business

#### **Advantages**

It has fewer strings attached

More amount of money is raised at once

It promotes accountability in the business.

The external supervision leads to efficiency in business operations.

Low cost of operation, since family members offer their expertise at almost no cost.

It mentors individual into the culture of saving and business operations.

#### **Demerits**

Family conflicts are extended to the business, this affect its growth

Sometimes personal interest may affect the business profit making

It may lead to bad relationship between the fund administer and the family members

Decision making and implementation is delayed and difficult as a number of family members are to be consulted.

It breads Conflict of leadership of the family property.

### **SELLING PART OF THE BUSINESS OR PERSONAL PROPERTY**

This is where an entrepreneur converts some of the personal or business properties into cash to either get starting capital or expand the existing business.

#### **Advantages**

It has no strings attached.

Large amount of money is raised within a short period of time.

It leads to quick investment decision making.

It promotes hard work, in order to make profits and replace the sold property.

### **RETAINED EARNINGS**

Some parts of profits which belong to ordinary share holders may not be paid out as dividends in the period they are earned. These profits are reinvested into the business or used to start a new business or expend or improve on the existing one.

### **Commercial banks**

These provide finances in form of loans.Loan is the money borrowed from a financial

institution like banks, cooperative credit societies, etc

### **Classification of loans**

They can be short term or long term

The short term loan is the money borrowed with repayment period of less than one year.

They include:

**Bank over draft**, this is where a customer with a current account is allowed to withdraw money over and above what is on his or her account.

**Soft loans**, this is the money that is advanced by commercial banks with fewer conditions and for a short period of time.

**Cash credit**, this is an arrangement by which a bank allows its customers to borrow money up to certain limit against the security pledged.

### **LONG TERM SOURCES**

**Share capital**, this consists of ordinary share Capital and preference share capital

**Debenture or long term loans**, is defined as a written as a written acknowledgement of the debt incurred by a limited company. this takes about 20 and above years.

**Mortgages**, this raised by mortgaging assets

**Institutional investors**, these provide capital through the process of selling shares

#### **Advantages of using a loan as a source of business capital**

It provide extra capital to an entrepreneur, this is used to supplement on the available capital.

More money is raised in short period of time, this facilitate easy investment decision making.

It encourages hard work on the part of the borrower so as to repay the borrowed fund.

It facilitate easy planning, this is because large amount of money is raised in a single sum.

It's accompanied by external monitoring from the lender; this improves the performance of the business.

It helps the entrepreneur to supplement on his or her savings.

Sometimes certain loans bear low interest rate, this leads to the growth of the business capital.

For the case of insured loans any change in business performance caused by natural factor, the entrepreneur assets is not affected.

A short term loan helps an entrepreneur to offset short-term deficit e.g paying workers, accessing raw materials etc.

#### **Disadvantages**

One can't access it within the short period of time, acquiring it is a process. This delays investment decisions.

It is accompanied by external control; this affects the operation of the business.

Interest amount sometimes is high, this increases the business expenditures e.g. paying workers salaries on time is affected.

In case of business failure, the lending institution may take over ownership of the business.

Sometimes lending institutions take possession of the security pledged this affects the growth of business.

It affects the capital growth of the business, this is because the entrepreneur pays back more than the amount borrowed.

### **Procedure for borrowing**

Developing a financial plan

Carrying out market survey on the lending institutions

Making an inquiry on the identified financial institutions

Obtaining lending terms and conditions of the different financial institutions.

Comparing the terms and conditions

Selecting the financial institution to deal with

Applying for a loan

Filling the application loan form

Assessing the applicant to establish whether the business is capable of paying back the loan.

Agree on the terms and conditions for investment and repayment of the loan.

Presenting the collateral security

Obtaining the loan

Start paying the loan

### **Circumstances under which an entrepreneur may go in for a loan**

When he wants to make an urgent profitable opportunity that requires immediate funding.

When there is a financial gap to be filled

When the entrepreneur wants to expand the business

In case the entrepreneur wants to meet the market demand.

In case the entrepreneur wants to supplement on the existing capital.

When there is need to increase on the working capital so as to serve the customer better.

When an entrepreneur is faced with short term financial crisis e.g. fall in demand resulting into a drop in the profit level.

### **LOAN MANAGEMENT**

This refers to the various ways of how an entrepreneur is to effectively utilize the procured fund profitably in order to make a profit and repay the funds at the sometime

maintaining a good relationship with the lender.

The following ways are used

### **Loan repayment schedule**

This is a table drawn by the lending institution or individuals showing the agreed monthly installment amount are to be paid in terms of loan amount, interest amount.

It's drawn using two methods of interest calculations that is

Fixed method and reducing method

### **Example one**

Mega enterprise borrowed shs 4,000,000 from Barclays Bank at an interest rate of 5% per month and it's paid in equal installment. Prepare a loan repayment schedule using a fixed method and reducing balance method.

### **Solution**

#### **DEMAKOKO MICRO FINANCE LTD**

P. o. box 123 mbale

Loan repayment schedule

Name of the client: mega enterprises account no: 12224353

Loan size shs:4,000,000 .interest rate per month 5%

Loan period 5 years

Method of calculating interest: fixed installment method.

| Period<br>year | Principal installment<br>Shs | Interest amount<br>Shs | Total repayment<br>shs | Principal balance<br>shs |
|----------------|------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1              | 800,000                      | 2,400,000              | 3,200,000              | 3,200,000                |
| 2              | 800,000                      | 2,400,000              | 3,200,000              | 2,400,000                |
| 3              | 800,000                      | 2,400,000              | 3,200,000              | 1,600,000                |
| 4              | 800,000                      | 2,400,000              | 3,200,000              | 800,000                  |
| 5              | 800,000                      | 2,400,000              | 3,200,000              | Nil                      |
| Total          | 4,000,000                    | 12,000,000             | 16,000,000             |                          |

Drafted by.....

Name .....

Title.....

Approved by.....

Name.....

Title.....

### **Note;**

Interest is calculated as  $5 \times 12 = 60\%$  per year  $(60/100 \times 4,000,000) = \text{shs } 2,400,000$

Principal installment  $= 4,000,000 / 5 = \text{shs } 800,000$  per year

Total repayment = interest amount + principal installment  $800,000 + 2,400,000 = \text{shs } 3,200,000$

### **Reducing balance method**

Demakoko micro finance ltd

P o box 123 mbale  
Loan repayment schedule

Name of the client: mega enterprises account no: 12224353

Loan size: shs 4,000,000. Interest rate per month 5% Loan period: 5 years

Branch: mbale

Method of calculating interest: reducingbalancing method.

| Period<br>year | Principal installment<br>Shs | Interest amount<br>Shs | Total repayment<br>Shs | Principal balance<br>shs |
|----------------|------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1              | 800,000                      | 2,400,000              | 3,200,000              | 3,200,000                |
| 2              | 800,000                      | 1,920,000              | 2,720,000              | 2,400,000                |
| 3              | 800,000                      | 1,340,000              | 2,140,000              | 1,600,000                |
| 4              | 800,000                      | 960,000                | 1,760,000              | 800,000                  |
| 5              | 800,000                      | 480,000                | 1,280,000              | Nil                      |
| <b>Total</b>   | <b>4,000,000</b>             | <b>7,100,000</b>       | <b>1,1,100,000</b>     |                          |

Drafted by.....

Name .....

Title.....

Approved by.....

Name.....

Title.....

#### **Note:**

The interest is calculated basing on the outstanding principal loan balance for example in year one,  $60/100 \times 4,000,000 = \text{shs } 2,400,000$ , paid loan principal installment 800,000 and the balance being shs 3,200,000.

Year .  $3,200,000 \times 60/100 = \text{shs } 1,920,000$ . Etc

Documenting every details of the loan

Informing the leading institution of any change in the business performance incase such changes may affect the sales.

Investing the loan in productive activities, such that the profits realized is used to pay the loan.

Ensuring proper management of the business, so as to make the business profitable to ease loan payment

Ensuring effective communication with the lender about issues related to loan management.

Attending workshops so as to be equipped with financial management information.

#### **FINANCIAL NEEDS OF A POTENTIAL BUSINESS**

The success of every business depends on proper identification of business needs. Like human beings have needs such as food security is the same case with business. The

business needs include;

### **INVESTMENT NEEDS**

These are need that an entrepreneur invests in order to get a return. These needs are either capital investment need or working capital needs. Capital investment needs include

- Acquisition of land
- Site preparation
- Buildings
- Machinery and equipment
- Installation of fixtures and fittings
- Furniture
- Provision for inflation

### **WORKING CAPITAL NEEDS**

This refers items needed to facilitate day to day activities of the business. These include;

- Purchase of raw materials
- Payments of labour
- Payment of utilities(water,power,telephone)
- Transport costs
- Packaging materials
- Payment of tax
- Machinery repairs
- Stationery and postage
- Payment of Interest on loans

### **PRE OPERATING NEEDS**

These are business needs that the entrepreneur meets before commencement of business. They include;

- Business registration
- Trading license
- Market research
- Installation expenses
- Advertising
- Administrative costs
- Legal fees
- Supervision expenses
- Initial rent

### **BUSINESS BUDGET**

A budget is a detailed statement which shows the estimated business revenue and estimated expenditure of the business for a given financial year. In finance, a financial plan is very critical in examining the financial implication of the business expenditures.

### **Importance of financial plan**

**Objectives of budgeting in business**

- To raise revenue for the business
- To maintain competitive advantage of the business
- To control expenditure of the business
- To maintain quality of products in the business
- To ensure effective utilization of the procured funds
- To achieve efficiency in the business

**Types of budgets**

- Fixed capital budget

| TOOTO DECORATORS                  |                  |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| P o 170 mbale                     |                  |
| Fixed capital budget              |                  |
| <b>Fixed capital requirements</b> | <b>shs</b>       |
| Acquisition                       | 100,000          |
| Purchase of machines tools        | 100,000          |
| Construction of business premises | 400,000          |
| Purchase of furniture             | 500,000          |
| Truck                             | 200,000          |
| <b>Total</b>                      | <b>1,300,000</b> |
| <b>Pre operating budget</b>       |                  |

| METHA HONEY MILLERS    |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| P o box 120 mbale      |                   |
| Pre-operating budget   |                   |
| <b>Requirements</b>    | <b>shs</b>        |
| Business requisition   | 1,000,000         |
| Trading license        | 1,000,000         |
| Market research        | 1,000,000         |
| Installations expenses | 3,000,000         |
| Advertising            | 1,000,000         |
| Administrative costs   | 2,000,000         |
| Initial rent           | 1,000,000         |
| <b>Total</b>           | <b>10,000,000</b> |

**Working capital budget**

METHAT MEAT PROCESSOR  
P. o.box120 mbale

| Working capital budget                     |          |                 |
|--------------------------------------------|----------|-----------------|
| Requirement                                | shs      |                 |
| Purchase of materials                      |          | 1000,000        |
| Payment of labour                          | 1000,000 |                 |
| Payment of utilities water power telephone |          | 1000,000        |
| Transport costs                            | 1000,000 |                 |
| Packaging materials                        |          | 1000,000        |
| Payment of tax                             | 1000,000 |                 |
| <b>Total</b>                               |          | <b>6000,000</b> |

### **OTHER BUDGETS**

Marketing budget

Production budget

Organizational budget

### **FINANCIAL STATEMENT ANALYSIS**

A financial statement is an official document of an enterprise, which explores the entire financial information of the enterprise. Financial statement is an organized collection of data according to logical and consistent with accounting procedures. Its purpose is to convey an understanding of the financial aspects of the business. Hence a financial statement is the summary of the accounting process which provides useful information to both internal and external parties. Financial statements consist of the following;

Income statement or profit and loss account

Balance sheet or the position statement

### **INCOME STATEMENT**

It's also called profit and loss account which reflects the operational position of the business during a particular period of time. Normally it consists of one accounting year. It determines the entire operational performance of the business like total revenue generated and expenses incurred for earning that revenue. Income statement helps to ascertain the gross profit and net profit of the business.

Gross profit is determined by preparation of trading account and net profit is determined by preparation of the profit and loss account.

### **ITEM RECORDED IN THE TRADING ACCOUNT AND NET PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT**

**Purchases**, this refers to the goods bought by an entrepreneur for resale.

**Opening stock**, (inventory) this refers to unsold goods available in the business at the beginning of a new financial year.

NB. A business that has just commenced business does not have opening stock .hence its purchases becomes the opening stock.

**Closing stock**, this refers to the value of goods not sold by business at the end of the financial trading period. It's subtracted from the cost of goods available for sale

**Sales**, this refers to the value of goods which have been sold by a business. Or it'



s the revenue earned from the goods sold. The value is used to calculate the gross profit or loss.

**Sales returns or returns inwards**, these are goods previously sold but have been brought back to the business. ie sales-returns inwards = net sales

**Reasons goods are sometimes returned**

When goods are expired

When goods are wrong size

When goods have been damaged

When goods are of wrong color

**Purchases returns or return outwards**, these are goods previously bought by a business but have been sent back to the supplier. The value is subtracted from the purchases to get the net purchases that is

Net purchases = purchases - purchase returns

**Gross profit**, this refers to the excess of net sales over the cost of goods sold. Or it's the total profit obtained by an entrepreneur before paying off the operating and other expenses that is;

Gross profit = purchases - cost of goods sold

**Gross loss**, this refers to a situation where cost of sales exceeds the net sales.

**Trading or direct expenses**, these are expenses incurred by a business in order to get goods to the reach place and ready for sale such expenses are added to the purchases to get the total cost spent on goods bought. Trading expenses include;

Carriage inwards

Wages on purchases

Import duty on purchases

**Carriage**, this refers to the cost incurred in transporting the goods into and out of the business. They are of two types;

**Carriage inwards**, this is the transport cost of bringing the goods bought up to the business. It forms part of the cost of goods bought and is added to the purchases in the trading account.

**Carriage out wards**, these are costs of transporting goods sold up to the buyer's premises. Therefore they are added to the operating expenses

**Drawing of goods**, these are the physical items (goods) taken out of the business by the entrepreneur for private use. They are subtracted from the purchases in the trading account, because such goods are recorded in the owners withdrawal account.

**NB: its only drawings in form of goods that must be treated in the trading account**

Salaries, this is payment usually made to skilled labour at a fixed amount made after a fixed time interval

**Supplementary or miscellaneous income**, this is a term used to refer to other

incomes or revenue that a business earns from other sources other than sales.

They take the form of;

Rent income or rent received

Commission income

Interest received

Discount received

Bad debts recovered

All supplementary incomes are added to the gross profit in the profit and loss account to get the total income of the business.

### **Methods of preparation**

There are two methods used that is the T-format and the vertical method

However I have considered the vertical method in the following examples in this book

### **Example one**

The following information was extracted from the books of fuga obulamu traders for the year ended 31 December 2016

| Particulars       | shs     | closing stock      | 6,000 shs |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------|-----------|
| Opening stock     | 15,000  | rent               | 6,000     |
| Purchases         | 180,000 | insurance          | 2,000     |
| Sales             | 250,000 | advertisement      | 2,500     |
| Returns inwards   | 5,000   | wages and salaries | 4,000     |
| Returns outwards  | 4,000   | stationery         | 5,000     |
| Discount allowed  | 1,000   |                    |           |
| Rent received     |         | 80,000             |           |
| Discount received | 15,000  |                    |           |

Required;

Prepare income statement for fuga obulamu traders for the year ended 31 December 2016.

solution

**FUGA OBULAMU TRADERS' INCOME STATEMENT**  
For the year ended 31 December 2016

| Particulars                     | Shs     | Shs            | Shs            |
|---------------------------------|---------|----------------|----------------|
| Sales                           |         |                | 250,000        |
| Less returns inwards            |         |                | 5,000          |
| <b>Net sales</b>                |         |                | <b>245,000</b> |
| Less cost of sales;             |         |                |                |
| Opening stock                   |         | 15,000         |                |
| And purchases                   | 180,000 |                |                |
| Less returns out wards          | 4,000   | 176,000        |                |
| <b>Goods available for sale</b> |         | <b>191,000</b> |                |
| Less closing stock              |         | 6,000          |                |
| Cost of sales                   |         |                | 185,000        |
| <b>Gross profit</b>             |         |                | <b>60,000</b>  |
| Add other incomes;              |         |                |                |
| Rent received                   |         | 80,000         |                |
| Discount received               |         | 15,000         |                |
|                                 |         |                | 95,000         |

|                                  |  |       |                |
|----------------------------------|--|-------|----------------|
| <b>Gross income</b>              |  |       | <b>155,000</b> |
| <b>Less: operating expenses;</b> |  | 6,000 |                |
| Rent                             |  | 2,000 |                |
| Advertisement                    |  | 2,500 |                |
| Wages and salaries               |  | 4,000 |                |
| Stationery                       |  | 5,000 | 20,500         |
| Discount allowed                 |  | 1,000 |                |
| stationery                       |  |       |                |
| <b>total expenses</b>            |  |       | <b>134,500</b> |
| <b>NET PROFITS</b>               |  |       |                |

### EXAMPLE TWO

The following information was extracted from the books of HAM school canteen for the year ended 30 June 2017.

|                   |             |
|-------------------|-------------|
| Purchases         | 400,000 shs |
| Sales             | 950,000     |
| Discount allowed  | 5,000       |
| Discount received | 4,500       |
| Rent              | 16,000      |
| Rent received     | 55,000      |
| Insurance         | 35,000      |
| Carriage outwards | 28,000      |
| Electricity       | 25,000      |
| Salaries          | 22,000      |
| Bad debts         | 14,000      |
| Office expenses   | 15,000      |

|                  |         |
|------------------|---------|
| Carriage inwards | 18,000  |
| Returns inwards  | 5,000   |
| Returns outwards | 10,000  |
| Opening stock    | 100,000 |
| Closing stock    | 30,000  |

Required; prepare HAM canteen`s income statement for the year ended 30 June 2017

**HAM CANTEEN`S**  
**Income statement**  
**For the year ended 30 June 2017**

| Particulars                | Shs     | shs     | Shs            |
|----------------------------|---------|---------|----------------|
| <b>SALES</b>               |         |         | <b>950,000</b> |
| Less; returns inward       |         |         | 5,000          |
| Net sales                  |         |         | 945,000        |
| <b>Less: COST OF SALES</b> |         |         |                |
| Opening stock              |         | 100,000 |                |
| Add purchases              | 400,000 |         |                |
| Add carriage inwards       | 18,000  |         |                |
| Purchases before returns   | 418,000 |         |                |
| Less returns out wards     | 10,000  |         |                |
| Net purchases              |         | 408,000 |                |
| Goods available for sale   |         | 508,000 |                |
| Less closing stock         |         | 30,000  |                |
| <b>Cost of sale</b>        |         |         | <b>478,000</b> |
| Gross profit               |         |         | 46,7000        |
| Add other incomes          |         |         |                |
| Discount received          |         | 4,500   |                |
| Rent received              |         | 55,000  |                |
| <b>GROSS INCOME</b>        |         |         | <b>526,500</b> |

|                           |  |        |                |
|---------------------------|--|--------|----------------|
| LESS: OPERATING EXPENSES; |  |        |                |
| Discount allowed          |  | 5,000  |                |
| Rent                      |  | 16,000 |                |
| Insurance                 |  | 35,000 |                |
| Carriage outwards         |  | 28,000 |                |
| Electricity               |  | 25,000 |                |
| Salaries                  |  | 22,000 |                |
| Bad debts                 |  | 14,000 |                |
| Office expenses           |  | 15,000 |                |
| <b>Total expenses</b>     |  |        | <b>160,000</b> |
| <b>NET PROFIT</b>         |  |        | <b>366,500</b> |

### Example 3

The following was extracted from the books of Jennifer agro business Ltd for the year ended 2017

|                    |            |
|--------------------|------------|
| Sales              | 40,000,000 |
| Purchases          | 20,000,000 |
| Purchases returns  | 1,620,000  |
| Sales returns      | 500,000    |
| Opening stock      | 10,000,000 |
| Salaries and wages | 3,000,000  |
| Telephone          | 600,000    |
| Closing stock      | 980,000    |

Required prepare Jennifer agro business Ltd's income statement for the year ended 31 December 2017

### BALANCE SHEET

Balance sheet is a statement which shows the financial position of the business at particular time. It shows the money value of assets, liabilities and capital of the business on a given date. Hence it's used to understand the strength and weakness of the business. A balance sheet is prepared basing on an equation called the accounting equation or book keeping equation. This equation states that. Assets = liabilities **OR** assets = capital + liabilities,

$$C+L=A$$

$$A-L=C$$

$$A-C=L$$

### Importance of a balance sheet

It's used in decision making and planning purposes

It shows the assets and liabilities of the firm

It is used to compare a firm's financial performance with similar firms or previous periods

It's used to determine the financial position of the a firm at a particular date

It's used by creditors and bankers to decide the amount of credit and loans to extend to a firm.

### ELEMENTS OF BALANCE SHEET

**Assets** these are the possessions of a business. Orthese are the possessions or properties owned by the business. They are grouped into two;

**Fixed assets**; these are the possessions or properties of the business which are of durable nature bought for use in the business for a longperiod of time. Examples include;

- Land
- Buildings
- Plant and machinery
- Vehicles
- Fittings and fixtures
- Furniture etc

**Current assets**, these are the possessions of the business which stay for a shorter period of time and are easily changed into cash. Common examples include;

- Cash
- Cash at bank
- Debtors
- Stock
- Raw materials
- Bills receivable
- Payments in advance. Or prepaid expenses
- Unused stationery
- Income due/ income not yet received.

### LIABILITIES

These are debts or amount of money that the business owes to outsiders. Or they are claims of outsiders on the business. They are of two types;

**Long term liabilities**, these are debts or amount of money borrowed by the business that is to be repaid after a long period of time usually after year. Examples include;

- Bank loans of one year and above

Debentures

Mortgages

**Current liabilities or short term liabilities**, these are short debts of a business which are repaid within a short time usually less than one year.

Or these are claims by outsiders on the business that are repaid within one accounting period.

Examples include;

Creditors

Bank overdrafts

Expenses due

Bills payable

## CAPITAL

This is the amount of money or resources invested in the business by the owner or an entrepreneur.

### TYPES OF CAPITAL

**Initial capital or capital invested**, this refers to the actual amount of money or assts brought into the business by the entrepreneur.

**Owner`s equity or net worth**, this is the amount of resources in the business that belongs to the owner at a given date. Or

It`s the amount of money that remains in the business after adding new investments and net profit or loss and subtracting drawings and any liabilities of the business. or

This is the difference between the business assets and liabilities of the business.

Capital owned = **initial capital + Net profit +additional investment – Drawings -loss**

**Loan capital or borrowed capital**, this is the total amount borrowed by the business inform of long term liabilities. That is;

Borrowed capital =total long term liabilities

Fixed capital, this refers to the value of fixed assets in the business.

Fixed capital=total fixed assets.

**Liquid capital**, this refers to the value of current assets in form of cash, cash at bank and bills receivable. **Liquid capital =total current assets- closing stock**

**Working capital**, this is the excess of current assets over current liabilities of the business. Or

Working capital is the difference between current assets and current liabilities. That is to say

Working capital= asset-current liabilities.

It`salso known as net current assets when the value of the current assts exceeds current liabilities

**Capital employed**, this is the total of the fixed assets plus the working capital. Or



it's the sum of the owner's equity and the long term liabilities of the business. That is  
 Capital employed=fixed asset +working capital. Or  
 Working capital=capital owned +long term liabilities  
 Trading capital or gross capital employed=the total value of all the assets in the  
 business. That is to say sum of fixed assets and current asset.

### PREPARATION OF BALANCE SHEET

It must have heading

Items should be arranged in the category of assets, liabilities and capital

Order of permanency

Start with fixed assets and current assets and finally capital

### Methods of preparation

There are two method used that is the T-format and the vertical method

However I have considered the vertical method in the following examples in this book

Example

The following information was extracted from the books NORAKI rice business at the end of the year ended 31 December 2016

|               |        |                 |       |
|---------------|--------|-----------------|-------|
| Capital       | 10,000 | stock           | 4,500 |
| Machinery     | 3,500  | bank overdrafts | 800   |
| Building      | 4,000  | bank            | 500   |
| Motor vehicle | 1,500  | debtors         | 3,500 |
| Furniture     | 2,500  |                 |       |
| 2year loan    | 7,000  |                 |       |
| Creditors     | 2,200  |                 |       |

Required: prepare NORAKI'S balance sheet as at 31 December 2016

Solution

### NORAKI RICE BUSINESS'S BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31 DECEMBER 2016

| PARTICULARS   | SHS | SHS   | SHS    |
|---------------|-----|-------|--------|
| FIXED ASSETS  |     |       |        |
| Machinery     |     | 3,500 |        |
| Buildings     |     | 4,000 |        |
| Motor vehicle |     | 1,500 |        |
| Furniture     |     | 2,500 | 11,500 |

|                           |       |       |               |
|---------------------------|-------|-------|---------------|
| CURRENT ASSETS            |       |       |               |
| Debtors                   | 3,500 |       |               |
| Bank                      | 500   |       |               |
| Stock                     | 4,500 | 8,500 |               |
| LESS: CURRENT LIABILITIES |       |       |               |
| Creditors                 | 2,200 |       |               |
| Bank overdraft            | 800   | 3,000 |               |
| Working capital           |       |       | 5,500         |
| CAPITAL EMPLOYED          |       |       | <b>17,000</b> |
| Financed by;              |       |       |               |
| Capital                   |       |       | 10,000        |
| Add 2yeae loan            |       |       | 7,000         |
|                           |       |       | <b>17,000</b> |

### EXERCISE

The following information was extracted from books of Kamalu enterprise for the month of August.

The following information was obtained from the books of Hope enterprises on 31- 3- 14

|                           |           |
|---------------------------|-----------|
|                           | Shs       |
| Land and buildings        | 4,000,000 |
| Furniture                 | 540,000   |
| Juice processor (machine) | 900,000   |
| Motor vehicle             | 180,000   |
| Mortgage loan             | 2,000,000 |
| Debenture                 | 400,000   |
| 3 years loan              | 500,000   |
| Capital                   | 2900,000  |
| Net profit                | 300,000   |
| Commission income prepaid | 65,000    |
| Stock in trade            | 3,000,000 |
| Bank balance              | 28,000    |
| Cash in hand              | 440,000   |
| Prepaid expenses          | 3,000     |

|                      |         |
|----------------------|---------|
| Creditors            | 81,000  |
| Interest on land due | 145,000 |

**Required**

Prepare a balance sheet on that date  
 Calculate the following types of capital  
 Fixed capital  
 Working capital  
 Capital employed  
 Borrowed capital  
 Net worth  
 EXERCISE

Below are the financial transactions of Busiro traders as at 31<sup>st</sup> Dec 2017

|                 |           |
|-----------------|-----------|
| Capital         | 1,810,000 |
| Motor van       | 1,500,000 |
| Closing stock   | 460,000   |
| Bank loan       | 1,550,000 |
| Bank balance    | 108,000   |
| Debentures      | 1,200,000 |
| Fixtures        | 1,400,000 |
| Building        | 1,490,000 |
| Creditors       | 1,360,000 |
| Bank over draft | 1,400,000 |
| Debtors         | 1223,000  |
| Cash balance    | 108,000   |

The following information was also compiled

|                                                  |           |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Opening stock as at 1 <sup>st</sup> January 2013 | 1,732,000 |
| Purchase for the year                            | 1,820,000 |
| Return outwards                                  | 1,082,000 |

Using the above information, you are required to calculate

Fixed capital  
 Borrowed capital  
 Cost of sales  
 Average stock  
 Rate of stock turn  
 Working capital  
 Capital employed

### **PREPARING FINAL ACCOUNTS (INCOME STATEMENT) FROM A GIVEN TRIAL BALANCE**

From a given trial balance the income statement and the balance sheet can be prepared using information from the same source.

A trial balance is table that shows a list of item balances as per their ledgers at a given date. The total of debt balances is always equal to total balances of the credit.

### **Reasons for preparing a trail balance**

It is prepared to check the arithmetic accuracy recording of the business transactions in the books of accounts.(ledger and cash book)

To show the value of various assets,liabilities,expenses and revenue items of the business at a particular date.

To provide information for the preparation of the final accounts and balance sheet

To test whether the ledger account balances have been correctly posted to the collect columns of the trail balance

A trail balance is prepared as a step towards final accounts.

### Structure of trail balance

| Details | Folio | Debt (shs) | Credit (shs) |
|---------|-------|------------|--------------|
|         |       |            |              |

### Accounts and their balances brought down

Capital (Cr)

Assets (Dr)

Liabilities (Cr)

Expenses/ losses (Dr)

Income/gains (Cr)

The following information was extracted from mukko enterprises on 28.2.2017

|                       |        |        |
|-----------------------|--------|--------|
| Purchases             | 37,600 |        |
| Sales                 | 65,800 |        |
| Cash at bank          | 3,800  |        |
| Cash in hand          |        | 700    |
| Capital               |        | 33,000 |
| Drawings              | 9,500  |        |
| Office furniture      | 7,800  |        |
| Rent rates            | 3,400  |        |
| Wages and salaries    | 8,600  |        |
| Discounts allowed     | 2,300  |        |
| Discounts received    | 1,200  |        |
| Debtors               | 16,400 |        |
| Creditors             | 8,300  |        |
| Stock (opening stock) | 6,900  |        |
| Commission received   |        | 900    |
| Delivery van          | 8,000  |        |
| Bad debts written off |        | 2,700  |
| Van running costs     | 1,500  |        |

### Required

Prepare .trail balance for mukko enterprises for the year ended 28 February 2017

prepare income statement for mukko enterprises for the year ended 28 February 2017 and balance sheet as at 28 February 2017

**Example 3**

The following information trial balance was extracted from the books of JAK stationery shop as at 28 February 2017.

| Details               | Dr      | Cr      |
|-----------------------|---------|---------|
| Sale                  |         | 128,000 |
| Purchases             | 90,000  |         |
| Returns               | 6,000   | 5,000   |
| Carriage inwards      | 10,000  |         |
| Opening stock         | 28,000  |         |
| Rent                  | 4,000   |         |
| Advertising           | 8,000   |         |
| Premises              | 122,000 |         |
| Machinery             | 75,000  |         |
| Debtors               | 18,000  |         |
| Creditors             |         | 31,000  |
| Bank loan             |         | 60,000  |
| Cash at hand          | 14,000  |         |
| Cash at bank          | 27,000  |         |
| Drawing               | 10,000  |         |
| Discount allowed      | 5,000   |         |
| Discount received     |         | 6,000   |
| Commission receivable |         | 20,000  |
| Capital               |         | 190,000 |
| Carriage outwards     | 8,000   |         |



|                          |         |               |               |
|--------------------------|---------|---------------|---------------|
| Sale                     |         | 128,000       |               |
| Less: sales return       |         | 6,000         | 122,000       |
| Less cost of sales       |         |               |               |
| Opening stock            |         | 28,000        |               |
| Add: purchases           | 90,000  |               |               |
| Add : carriage           | 10,000  |               |               |
| Purchases before returns | 100,000 |               |               |
| Less: purchase returns   | 5,000   |               |               |
| <b>NET PURCHASES</b>     |         | <b>95,000</b> |               |
| Goods available for sale |         | 123,000       |               |
| Less: closing stock      |         | 48,000        | 75,000        |
| Cost of sales            |         |               | <b>47,000</b> |
| <b>GROSS PROFIT</b>      |         |               |               |
| Add: discount allowed    |         | 6,000         |               |
| Commission receivable    |         | 20,000        | 26,000        |
| Gross income             |         |               | 73,000        |
| <b>LESS: OPERATING</b>   |         |               |               |
| Rent                     |         | 4,000         |               |
| Advertising              |         | 8,000         |               |
| Discount allowed         |         | 5,000         |               |
| Carriage outward         |         | 8,000         |               |
| Wages and salaries       |         | 15,000        | 40,000        |
| Total operating expenses |         |               | <b>33,000</b> |
| <b>NET PROFIT</b>        |         |               |               |

**JAK STATIONERY SHOP`S**

## Balance sheet

As at 28 February 2017

| DETAILS                          | SHS    | SHS     | SHS            |
|----------------------------------|--------|---------|----------------|
| <b>FIXED</b>                     |        |         |                |
| Premises                         |        | 122,000 |                |
| Machinery                        |        | 75,000  | 197,000        |
| <b>Current assets</b>            |        |         |                |
| Stock                            | 48,000 |         |                |
| Debtors                          | 18,000 |         |                |
| Cash at bank                     | 27,000 |         |                |
| Cash in hands                    | 14,000 | 107,000 |                |
| <b>Less: current liabilities</b> |        |         |                |
| Creditors                        |        | 31,000  |                |
| Working capital                  |        |         | 76,000         |
| <b>CAPITAL EMPLOYED</b>          |        |         | <b>273,000</b> |
| <b>FINANCED BY</b>               |        |         |                |
| Capital                          |        | 190,000 |                |



|                             |  |        |                |
|-----------------------------|--|--------|----------------|
| Add::net profit             |  | 33,000 |                |
| Less: drawings              |  | 10,000 | 227,000        |
| Add :Bank loan              |  |        | 60,000         |
| <b>NET CAPITAL EMPLOYED</b> |  |        | <b>273,000</b> |

The following relates to the trial balance extracted from salt traders for the year ended 31 December 2015.

| Particulars      | Dr shs  | Cr shs  |
|------------------|---------|---------|
| Cash in hand     | 42,000  |         |
| Cash at bank     | 80,000  |         |
| Stock 1.1.2015   | 100,000 |         |
| Creditors        |         | 100,000 |
| Returns inwards  | 15,000  |         |
| Sales            |         | 560,000 |
| Purchases        | 315,000 |         |
| Salaries         | 40,000  |         |
| Water bills      | 6,000   |         |
| Postage          | 2,000   |         |
| Drawings         | 89,000  |         |
| Return outwards  |         | 10,000  |
| Furniture        | 750,000 |         |
| Motor van        | 350,000 |         |
| Loan             |         | 300,000 |
| Rent income      |         | 12,000  |
| Carriage inwards | 7,000   |         |

|                  |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Carriage outward | 10,000           |                  |
| Capital          |                  | 824,000          |
| Closing stock    | 13,500           |                  |
|                  | <b>1,806,000</b> | <b>1,806,000</b> |

**SALT TRADERS`**  
**INCOME STATEMENT**  
For the year ended 31 December 2015.

| PARTICULARS               | SHS     | SHS     | SHS     |
|---------------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| Sales                     |         |         | 560,000 |
| Less: returns inwards     |         |         | 15,000  |
| <b>Net sales</b>          |         |         | 545,000 |
| <b>Less cost of sales</b> |         |         |         |
| Opening stock             |         | 100,000 |         |
| Add: purchases            | 315,000 |         |         |
| Add :carriage inwards     | 7,000   |         |         |
| Purchases before returns  | 322,000 |         |         |
| Less :returns outward     | 10,000  |         |         |
| <b>Net purchases</b>      |         | 312,000 |         |
| Goods available for sale  |         | 412,000 |         |
| Less closing stock        |         | 13,500  |         |
| <b>COST OF SALE</b>       |         |         | 398,500 |
| <b>Gross profit</b>       |         |         | 146,500 |
| Add: rent income          |         |         | 12,000  |

|                             |  |        |         |
|-----------------------------|--|--------|---------|
| <b>Gross income</b>         |  |        | 158,500 |
| <b>LESS OPERATING COSTS</b> |  |        |         |
| Salaries                    |  | 40,000 |         |
| Water bills                 |  | 6,000  |         |
| Postage                     |  | 2,000  |         |
| Carriage outwards           |  | 10,000 | 58,000  |
| Total expenses              |  |        | 100,500 |
| <b>NET PROFITS</b>          |  |        |         |

**SALT TRADERS`**  
Balance sheet  
As at 31 December 2015

| Details               | shs    | Shs     | shs       |
|-----------------------|--------|---------|-----------|
| <b>ASSETS</b>         |        |         |           |
| Fixed assets          |        |         |           |
| Furniture             |        | 750,000 |           |
| Motor van             |        | 350,000 | 1,100,000 |
| <b>Current assets</b> |        |         |           |
| Cash in hands         | 42,000 |         |           |
|                       | 80,000 |         |           |

|                           |        |         |                  |
|---------------------------|--------|---------|------------------|
| Cash at bank              | 13,500 | 135,500 |                  |
| Closing stock             |        |         |                  |
| LESS: CURRENT LIABILITIES |        | 100,000 |                  |
| Creditors                 |        |         | 35,500           |
| Working capital           |        |         | <b>1,135,500</b> |
| CAPITAL EMPLOYED          |        |         |                  |
| <b>FINANCED BY:</b>       |        | 824,000 |                  |
| Capital                   |        | 100,500 |                  |
| Add: net profit           |        |         | 924,500          |
| Capital before drawings   |        |         | 89,000           |
| Less: drawings            |        |         | 835,500          |
| Capital worth             |        |         | 300,000          |
| Add long term liabilities |        |         | <b>1,135,500</b> |
| <b>NET WORTH</b>          |        |         |                  |
|                           |        |         |                  |

### YEAR –END ADJUSTMENTS

At the end of the financial year, some expenses overlap the period such expenses must be considered when the final accounts are prepared at the end of the period. Such expenses include

#### ACCRUALS,

These are expenses that remain unpaid at the end of the period. These expenses may also be called outstanding expenses or expenses owing or expenses due.

#### Treatment of such expenses

In the income statement, they are added to the expenses actually paid. In the balance sheet, they appear as current liabilities.

Examples include

- Rent unpaid
- Outstanding wages and salaries
- Outstanding electricity and water bills etc

## **PAYMENT IN ADVANCE OR PREPAYMENT EXPENSES**

These are expenses paid in advance that is to say expenses paid beyond the period under review e.g. rent paid in advance, rates insurance paid in advance. These payments are made before the benefits are enjoyed

### **Treatment**

In the income statement such expenses are deducted from the period's expenses and in the balance sheet such expenses are treated as current assets

## **INCOMES**

Like expenses, incomes may be received before working for it (income in advance) and sometimes such income may not be received as expected and therefore described as outstanding income.

### **Treatment**

#### **Income received in advance,**

Such income is subtracted from the incomes for the period in the income statement and in the balance sheet; such income is treated as current liabilities.

#### **Incomes outstanding**

Incomes outstanding are added to incomes actually received for the period. In the balance sheet it's treated as current asset

#### **Income earned but not yet received,**

It's possible that interest on bank deposit may be due but not yet credited or tenants have delayed payments, such incomes are treated as current assets and shown in the balance sheet

### **Example 4**

The following information was extracted from the books of Kampala coaches for the period ended 30 June 2017

|                  | SHS        |
|------------------|------------|
| Capital          | 1540,000   |
| Sales            | 25,000,000 |
| Purchases        | 16,000,000 |
| Drawings         | 30,000     |
| Rent             | 870,000    |
| Opening stock    | 420,000    |
| Returns inwards  | 40,000     |
| Returns outwards | 30,000     |
| Debtors          | 3,420,000  |
| Creditors        | 270,000    |
| Cash at bank     | 630,000    |
| Furniture        | 570,000    |
| Transport        | 220,000    |
| Advertising      | 590,000    |

### **Additional information:**

Closing stock was valued at shs 3,500,000

Rent accrued shs 30,000

Transport worth shs 20,000 was paid in advance

Required;

Prepare Kampala coaches' income statement for the period ended 30 June 2017 and balance sheet as at 30 June 2017

KAMPALA COACHES'  
Income statement  
For the period ended 30 June 2017

| PARTICULARS                     | SHS        | SHS               | SHS               |
|---------------------------------|------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Sales                           |            | 25,000,000        |                   |
| Less sales returns              |            | 40,000            |                   |
| <b>Net sales</b>                |            |                   | <b>24,960,000</b> |
| Less cost of goods sold:        |            |                   |                   |
| Opening stock                   |            | 420,000           |                   |
| Add purchases                   | 16,000,000 |                   |                   |
| Less returns outwards           | 30,000     |                   |                   |
| <b>Net purchases</b>            |            | <b>1,5970,000</b> |                   |
| Goods available                 |            | 16,390,000        |                   |
| Less closing stock              |            | <b>3,500,000</b>  |                   |
| Cost of goods sold              |            |                   | 12,890,000        |
| <b>Gross profit</b>             |            |                   | <b>12,070,000</b> |
| LESS OPERATING EXPENSES:        |            |                   |                   |
| Rent                            | 870,000    |                   |                   |
| Add accrued rent                | 30,000     | 900,000           |                   |
| Transport                       | 220,000    |                   |                   |
| Less transport paid in advance  | 20,000     | 200,000           |                   |
| Advertising                     |            | 590,000           |                   |
| <b>Total operation expenses</b> |            |                   | <b>1,690,000</b>  |
| <b>NET PROFIT</b>               |            |                   | <b>10,380,000</b> |

KAMPALA COACHES`  
Balance sheet  
As at 30 June 2017

| PARTICULARS                      | SHS       | SHS       | SHS               |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-------------------|
| <b>ASSETS</b>                    |           |           |                   |
| <b>Fixed asset</b>               |           |           |                   |
| furniture                        |           | 570,000   |                   |
| buildings                        |           | 6,480,000 | 7,050,000         |
| <b>CURRENT ASSET</b>             |           |           |                   |
| Debtors                          | 3,420,000 |           |                   |
| Cash at bank                     | 630,000   |           |                   |
| Closing stock                    | 3,500,000 |           |                   |
| Transport paid in advance        | 20,000    | 7,570,000 |                   |
| <b>LESS: CURRENT LIABILITIES</b> |           |           |                   |
| Creditors                        | 2,700,000 |           |                   |
| Rent accrued                     | 30,000    | 2,730,000 |                   |
| Working capital                  |           |           | 4,840,000         |
| <b>CAPITAL EMPLOYED</b>          |           |           | <b>11,890,000</b> |
| <b>FINANCED BY:</b>              |           |           |                   |

|                         |  |            |                   |
|-------------------------|--|------------|-------------------|
| Capital                 |  | 1,540,000  |                   |
| Add net profit          |  | 10,380,000 |                   |
| Capital before drawings |  |            | 11,920,000        |
| Less drawings           |  |            | 30,000            |
| <b>Net equity</b>       |  |            | <b>11,890,000</b> |
|                         |  |            |                   |

**EXAMPLE 5**

The following information relates to kunya traders' trial balance for the end of the 31 December 2017

| PARTICURS         | DR (shs)       | CR (SHS)       |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Capital           |                | 40,000         |
| Purchases         | 81,500         |                |
| Stock 1 Jan 2015  | 5,200          |                |
| Wages             | 6,165          |                |
| Sales             |                | 108,850        |
| Creditors         |                | 15,100         |
| Salaries          | 3,780          |                |
| Debtors           | 6,750          |                |
| Motor van         | 18,000         |                |
| Cash at Bank      | 6,735          |                |
| Electricity       | 890            |                |
| Rates             | 2,250          |                |
| Buildings         | 38,000         |                |
| Discount received |                | 1,050          |
| Discount allowed  | 610            |                |
| Rent income       |                | 3,200          |
| Commission income |                | 1,800          |
| Cash in hands     | 120            |                |
|                   | <b>170,000</b> | <b>170,000</b> |

**Additional information**

Closing stock was valued at shs 5460

Wages and salaries outstanding was shs 490 and 640 respectively

Rates have been paid for 15 month up to 31 March 2018

Commission due from client was shs 300 for the job already done

Rent of shs 200 was received in advance.

Required: prepare kunya traders' income statement for the year ended 31 December 2017

And balance sheet as at 31 December 2017



**KUNYA TRADERS`**  
Income statement  
For the year ended 31 December 2017

| <b>PARTICULARS</b>               | <b>SHS</b> | <b>SHS</b> | <b>SHS</b>    |
|----------------------------------|------------|------------|---------------|
| Sales                            |            |            | 108,850       |
| Less cost of goods sold:         |            |            |               |
| Opening stock                    |            | 5,200      |               |
| Add purchases                    | 81,500     |            |               |
| Add wages                        | 6,165      |            |               |
| Add wages due                    | 490        |            |               |
| <b>Net purchases</b>             |            | 88,155     |               |
| Goods available for sale         |            | 93,355     |               |
| Less :closing stock              |            | 5,460      |               |
| Cost of goods sold               |            |            | 87,895        |
| <b>Gross profit</b>              |            |            | <b>20,955</b> |
| Add other incomes                |            |            |               |
| Commission income                | 1,800      |            |               |
| Add commission due               | 300        | 2,100      |               |
| Rent income                      | 3,200      | 3,000      |               |
| Less: rent received in advance   | 200        | 1,050      |               |
| Discount received                |            |            | 6,150         |
| <b>Gross income</b>              |            |            | <b>27,105</b> |
|                                  | 3,780      |            |               |
| <b>Less: operating expenses:</b> |            |            |               |
| Salaries                         | 640        | 4,420      |               |
| Add salaries due                 |            | 890        |               |
| Electricity                      | 2,250      |            |               |
| Rate                             | 450        | 1,800      |               |
| Less prepaid                     |            | 610        |               |

|                   |  |  |               |
|-------------------|--|--|---------------|
| Discount allowed  |  |  |               |
| Total expenses    |  |  |               |
| <b>NET PROFIT</b> |  |  | 7,720         |
|                   |  |  | <b>19,385</b> |

KUNYA TRADERS`  
Balance sheet  
As at 31 December 2017

| PARTICULARS                      | SHS    | SHS    | SHS           |
|----------------------------------|--------|--------|---------------|
| <b>ASSETS</b>                    |        |        |               |
| <b>FIXED ASSETS</b>              |        |        |               |
| Buildings                        |        | 38,000 |               |
| Motor van                        |        | 18,000 | 56,000        |
| <b>CURRENT ASSET</b>             |        |        |               |
| Stock                            | 5,460  |        |               |
| Debtor                           | 6,750  |        |               |
| Rates paid in advance            | 450    |        |               |
| Commission due                   | 300    |        |               |
| Cash at Bank                     | 6,735  |        |               |
| Cash in hand                     | 120    | 19,815 |               |
| <b>LESS: CURRENT LIABILITIES</b> |        |        |               |
| Creditors                        | 15,100 |        |               |
| Outstanding wages                | 490    |        |               |
| Outstanding salaries             | 640    |        |               |
| Rent received in advance         | 200    | 16,430 | 3,385         |
| Working capital                  |        |        | <b>59,385</b> |

|                         |  |  |               |
|-------------------------|--|--|---------------|
| <b>CAPITAL EMPLOYED</b> |  |  |               |
| FINANCED BY:            |  |  | 40,000        |
| Capital                 |  |  | 19,385        |
| Add net profit          |  |  | <b>59,385</b> |
| <b>Net equity</b>       |  |  |               |

### RESERVES AND PROVISIONS

In any business, it's necessary that some profits be put aside to cater for unforeseen events that may affect capital and planning for the business

Therefore reserves are made for depreciation of capital assets of the business. At the same time it's a rare case that all goods are sold on cash some are sold on credit which is also difficult to make all creditors settle their obligations and therefore provisions are made for those who may fail to meet their payment obligations

#### PROVISION FOR BAD DEBTS OR DOUBTFUL DEBTS AND DEPRECIATION

A provision is an amount of money put aside for a probable loss which cannot be calculated. The amount to be set aside depends on the past experience of the entrepreneur. Hence a provision may be increased or decreased

All provisions affect debtor's amount

For the case of decrease in provision the amount is added to the gross profit of the business.

#### PROVISION FOR DEPRECIATIONS

Depreciation refers to the total loss in value of fixed assets

##### Causes

Being out of date (obsolescence) that is assets loss value due to change in fashion

Exhaustion

Physical deterioration due to wear and tear

##### Calculation of depreciation

Reducing method

Straight line method

#### EXAMPLE 6

The following trial Balance was extracted from the books of Kumi traders association on 31

December 2016

|           | DR SHS     | CR SHS     |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| Capital   |            | 40,000,000 |
| Purchases | 26,154,000 |            |
| Sales     |            | 36,246,000 |

|                     |                    |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Salaries            | 4,814,000          |                    |
| Opening stock       | 4,307,000          |                    |
| Insurance           | 820,000            |                    |
| Rent income         |                    | 965,000            |
| Buildings           | 25,000,000         |                    |
| Furniture           | 14,500,000         |                    |
| Debtors             | 6,140,000          |                    |
| Other expenses      | 1,060,000          |                    |
| Creditors           |                    | 4,638,000          |
| Commission received |                    | 946,000            |
|                     | <b>8, 2795,000</b> | <b>8, 2795,000</b> |

#### ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Salaries due shs 350,000

Insurance was paid for 15 months

Rent received in advance was shs 165,000

Commission accrued but not yet received was shs 120,000

Furniture to be depreciated by 10%

Provide 5% for debtors are doubtful

Stock on 31 December 2016 was valued at shs 5008,000

Required: prepare income statement for kumi trader`s association for the year ended 31 December 2016 and Balance sheet as at 31 December 2016

### KUMI TRADERS` ASSOCIATION`S Income statement For the year ended 31 December 2016

| PARTICULARS              | SHS | SHS        | SHS               |
|--------------------------|-----|------------|-------------------|
| Sales                    |     |            | 56,246,000        |
| LESS COST OF SALES       |     |            |                   |
| Opening stock            |     | 4,307,000  |                   |
| Add purchases            |     | 26,154,000 |                   |
| Goods available for sale |     | 30,461,000 |                   |
| Less closing stock       |     | 5,008,000  |                   |
| <b>Cost of sales</b>     |     |            | <b>25,453,000</b> |
| Add other incomes        |     |            |                   |

|                                |           |           |                   |
|--------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-------------------|
| Rent received                  | 965,000   |           |                   |
| Less rent received in advance  | 165,000   | 800,000   |                   |
| Commission received            | 946,000   |           |                   |
| Add accrued commission         | 120,000   | 1,066,000 | 1,866,000         |
| <b>Gross income</b>            |           |           | <b>12,659,000</b> |
| <b>LESS OPERATING EXPENSES</b> |           |           |                   |
| Salaries                       | 4,814,000 |           |                   |
| Add accrued salaries           | 350,000   | 5,164,000 |                   |
| Insurance                      | 820,000   |           |                   |
| Lee prepaid insurance          | 205,000   | 615,000   |                   |
| Other expenses                 |           | 1,060,000 |                   |
| Bad debts                      |           | 307,000   |                   |
| Depreciation on furniture      |           | 1,450,000 |                   |
| Total operating expenses       |           |           | 8,596,000         |
|                                |           |           |                   |
| <b>NET PROFIT</b>              |           |           | <b>4063,000</b>   |

### KUMI TRADERS` ASSOCIATION`S

Balance sheet  
Asat 31 December 2016

| Particulars                     | Shs        | shs        | Shs               |
|---------------------------------|------------|------------|-------------------|
| Fixed asset                     |            |            |                   |
| Building                        |            | 25,000,000 |                   |
| Furniture                       | 14,500,000 |            |                   |
| Less provision for depreciation | 1,450,000  | 13,050,000 | 38,050,000        |
| Current assets                  |            |            |                   |
| Stock                           |            | 5,008,000  |                   |
| Debtors                         | 6,140,000  |            |                   |
| Less provision for bad debts    | 307,000    | 5,833,000  |                   |
| Prepaid insurance               |            | 205,000    |                   |
| Accrued commission              |            | 120,000    |                   |
| Total                           |            | 11,166,000 |                   |
| Less current liabilities        |            |            |                   |
| Creditors                       | 4,638,000  |            |                   |
| Salaries due                    | 350,000    |            |                   |
| Rent received in advance        | 165,000    | 5,153,000  |                   |
| Working capital                 |            |            | 6,013,000         |
| Capital employed                |            |            | 44,063,000        |
| Financed by                     |            |            |                   |
| Capital                         |            |            | 40,000,000        |
| Add net profit                  |            |            | 4,063,000         |
| <b>Capital employed</b>         |            |            | <b>44,063,000</b> |
|                                 |            |            |                   |

**Example 7**

The following information relates to the trial Balance of mbale hospital canteen for the

year ended 31 December 2017

|                             |           |            |
|-----------------------------|-----------|------------|
| Opening stock               | 1,046,050 |            |
| Capital                     |           | 12,500,000 |
| Sales                       |           | 4,352,100  |
| Returns 11,250              | 28,700    |            |
| Purchases                   | 2,070,850 |            |
| Plant and machinery at cost | 3,500,000 |            |
| Office furniture at cost    | 1,575,000 |            |
| Freehold property at cost   | 6,577,900 |            |
| Provision for bad debts     |           | 31,400     |
| Motor van at cost           | 362,000   |            |
| Shop fittings               | 64,300    |            |
| General expenses            | 18,7250   |            |
| Insurance                   | 225,000   |            |
| Postage and telephone       | 18,500    |            |
| Power and light             | 189,100   |            |
| Stationery and printing     | 29,100    |            |
| Rates                       | 176,200   |            |
| Bad debts                   | 25,750    |            |
| Wages and salaries          | 503,750   |            |
| Carriage outwards           | 222,100   |            |
| Debtors                     | 642,500   |            |
| Creditors                   |           | 276,000    |
| Drawings                    | 200,000   |            |
| Bank                        | 503,200   |            |
| Carriage inwards            | 175,000   |            |
| Cash                        | 98,600    |            |
| Discount received           |           | 21,200     |
| Provision for depreciation  |           |            |
| Plant and machinery         |           | 1,161,000  |
| Office furniture            |           | 33,000     |

#### Additional information

Closing stock was valued at shs 975,200

The proprietor took goods worth shs 105,000

Postage and telephone outstanding was shs 37,500

Wages outstanding shs 96,250

Rates of shs 120,000 were paid in advance

Provision for bad debts is to adjusted to 8% of debtors

Provide for Plant and machinery at 15% on the book value

Office furniture at 10% on cost

Motor van at 20% on cost

Shop and fittings at 5% on cost

Required

Prepare income statement for mbale hospital canteen for the year ended 31 December 2017 and Balance as at 31 December 2017

**MBALE HOSPITAL CANTEEN`S**  
**Income statement**  
For the year ended 31 December 2017

| <b>PARTICULARS</b>             | <b>SHS</b> | <b>SHS</b>       | <b>SHS</b>        |
|--------------------------------|------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Sales                          |            |                  | 4,352,100         |
| Less :sales returns            |            |                  | 11,250            |
| <b>NET SALES</b>               |            |                  | <b>4,340,850</b>  |
| <b>LESS COST OF SALES</b>      |            |                  |                   |
| Opening stock                  |            | 1,046,050        |                   |
| Add: purchases                 | 2,070,850  |                  |                   |
| carriage inwards               | 17,500     |                  |                   |
| Purchases before returns       | 2245,850   |                  |                   |
| Less:returns out wards         | 28,700     |                  |                   |
| Purchases before drawings      | 2,217,150  |                  |                   |
| Less: drawings                 | 105,000    |                  |                   |
| Net purchases                  |            | 2,112,150        |                   |
| Goods available for sale       |            | <b>3,158,200</b> |                   |
| Less closing stock             |            | 975,200          |                   |
| <b>Cost of sales</b>           |            |                  | <b>2,183,000</b>  |
| Gross profit                   |            |                  | 2,157,800         |
| Add discount received          |            |                  | 21,200            |
| <b>Gross income</b>            |            |                  | <b>21,759,000</b> |
| <b>LESS OPERATING EXPENSES</b> |            |                  |                   |



|                                       |         |                |               |
|---------------------------------------|---------|----------------|---------------|
| Insurance                             |         | 225,000        |               |
| General expenses                      |         | 187,250        |               |
| Postage and telephone                 | 18,500  |                |               |
| Add outstanding postage and telephone | 37,500  | <b>56,000</b>  |               |
| Power and lighting                    |         | 189,100        |               |
| Stationery                            |         | 29,100         |               |
| Rates                                 | 176,200 |                |               |
| Less rates paid in advance            | 120,000 | <b>56,200</b>  |               |
| Bad debts                             |         | 25,750         |               |
| Wages and salaries                    | 503,750 |                |               |
| Add outstanding wages and salaries    | 96,250  | <b>600,000</b> |               |
| Carriage out wards                    |         | 222,100        |               |
| Provision for bad debts               |         | 20,000         |               |
| Depreciation                          |         |                |               |
| Plant and machinery                   | 350,850 |                |               |
| Office furniture                      | 15,750  |                |               |
| Shop fittings                         | 3,215   |                |               |
| Motor van                             | 72,400  | 583,965        |               |
| <b>Total expenses</b>                 |         |                | 2,194,465     |
| <b>NET LOSS</b>                       |         |                | <b>15,465</b> |

MBALE HOSPITAL CANTEEN'S  
Balance sheet  
Asat 31 December 2017

| Particulars         | Shs       | shs | Shs |
|---------------------|-----------|-----|-----|
| <b>FIXED ASSETS</b> |           |     |     |
| Plant and machinery | 3,500,000 |     |     |

|                                   |           |                  |                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|------------------|-------------------|
| Less provision for depreciation   | 1,511,850 | <b>1,988,150</b> |                   |
| Office furniture                  | 157,5000  |                  |                   |
| Less provision for depreciation   | 190,500   | <b>1,384,500</b> |                   |
| Freehold property                 |           | 6,577,900        |                   |
| Motor van                         | 362,000   |                  |                   |
| Depreciation                      | 72,400    | <b>289,600</b>   |                   |
| Shop fittings                     | 64,300    |                  |                   |
| Less :depreciation                | 3,215     | <b>61,085</b>    | <b>10,301,235</b> |
| <b>CURRENT ASSETS</b>             |           |                  |                   |
| Stock                             |           | 975,200          |                   |
| Debtors                           | 642,500   |                  |                   |
| Less: provision for bad debts     | 51,400    | <b>591,100</b>   |                   |
| Cash at Bank                      |           | 503,200          |                   |
| Cash in hands                     |           | 98,600           |                   |
| Rtes paid in advance              |           | 120,000          |                   |
| Total                             |           | 2,288,100        |                   |
| <b>LESS: CURRENT LIABILITIES</b>  |           |                  |                   |
| Creditors                         | 276,050   |                  |                   |
| Outstanding postage and telephone | 37,500    |                  |                   |
| Outstanding wages and salaries    | 96,250    | <b>409,800</b>   |                   |
| Working capital                   |           |                  | 1,878,300         |
| Capital employed                  |           |                  | <b>12,179,535</b> |
| <b>FINANCED BY:</b>               |           |                  |                   |
| Capital                           |           |                  | 12,500,000        |
| Add net loss                      |           |                  | 15,465            |
| Capital employed before drawings  |           |                  | <b>12,484,535</b> |

|                         |  |  |                   |
|-------------------------|--|--|-------------------|
| Less drawings           |  |  | 305,000           |
| <b>CAPITAL EMPLOYED</b> |  |  | <b>12,179,535</b> |
|                         |  |  |                   |

**EXAMPLE 8**

The following trail balance relates to the books of apuuli enterprises ltd for the trading year ended 31 December 2016

|                         |     |             |
|-------------------------|-----|-------------|
| Purchases               | shs | 37,600,000  |
| Sales                   |     | 65,800,000  |
| Returns inwards         |     | 45,000      |
| Returns out wards       |     | 38,000      |
| Cash at hand            |     | 30,800,000  |
| Cash at bank            |     | 700,000     |
| Capital                 |     | 689,707,000 |
| Drawings                |     | 90,500,000  |
| Office furniture        |     | 480,000,000 |
| Rent and rates          |     | 3,400,000   |
| Salaries                |     | 8,600, 000  |
| Discount allowed        |     | 2,300, 000  |
| Discount received       |     | 1,200, 000  |
| Debtors                 |     | 16,400, 000 |
| Creditors               |     | 8,300, 000  |
| Wages                   |     | 1,500,000   |
| Stock on 1 Jan 2016     |     | 9,900,000   |
| Provision for bad debts |     | 900, 000    |
| Delivery van            |     | 80,000,000  |
| Van expenses            |     | 1,500, 000  |
| Bad debts               |     | 2,700,000   |

**Additional information**

Closing stock was shs 11700,000

Of rates shs 400,000 relates to Jan 2017 and of rent shs 500,000 was out standing

Bad debts written off at the end of the year was shs 300,000

Provision for bad debts to be adjusted to 10% of debtors

Required

Prepare income statement for apuuli traders' ltd for the year ended 31 December 2016

And Balance sheet as at 31 December 2016

#### Example 9

The following information relates to the obama events management business 31 Dec 2017

|                    | shs        |
|--------------------|------------|
| Sales              | 10,500,000 |
| Purchases          | 5,400,000  |
| Drawings           | 1,250,000  |
| Debtors            | 2,100,000  |
| Creditors          | 1,420,000  |
| Stock              | 3,500,000  |
| Motor van          | 820,000    |
| Equipment          | 1,945,000  |
| Carriage inwards   | 340,000    |
| Returns inwards    | 235,000    |
| Returns out wards  | 170,000    |
| Rent and rates     | 543,000    |
| Carriage out wards | 168,000    |
| Telephone          | 1,810,000  |
| Office expenses    | 920,000    |
| Salaries and wages | 146,000    |
| Insurance          | 690,000    |
| Postage            | 190,000    |
| Motor expenses     | 200,000    |
| Sundry expenses    | 306,000    |
| Capital            | 17,567,000 |
| Electricity        | 400,000    |

#### ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Stock at close was shs 3,230,000

Rent prepaid 45,000

Postage in arrears 20,000

Depreciate motor van by 5% per annum

Insurance of shs 45000 owing (outstanding )

Required

Prepare an income statement for obama events management for the year ended 31 Dec 2017 and

Balance sheet as at that date

#### BOOKKEEPING

By definition, bookkeeping is the process of recording business or a company's financial transactions the accounting process involves classifying, reporting and analyzing of data and none of it can take place if there is no organized and accurate bookkeeping.

**Better financial analysis and management,** Bookkeeping can systematize it up

from up-to-date follow-ups, invoicing and on-time payment for suppliers for analysis.

**Fulfillment of Tax Obligations, Bookkeeping** keeps track on any information and documents in order to accomplish annual tax. Tax returns are also made easier with an organized Balance Sheet, Cash Flow and Profit & Loss,

**Reporting to Investors is Easy**, From charts, graphs to lists of data presented to the investors are all acquired from the book of account.

**It makes Business Planning easy**, by the help of Balance Sheet and Profit & Loss is used to check if the company is on the right track financially.

**Proper Record Keeping** makes retrieving process easy once audit time comes

**Cash Flow** – Keeping track of cash flow is critically important for any business and it's only possible when a business have accurate financial records.

**Expenses** – Sole traders can claim specific expenses which have been wholly and exclusively incurred as part of their business. This ensures that the person doing the bookkeeping has an understanding of outgoing and monitors them for tax and accounting purposes.

**Profitability and Growth**, Accurate bookkeeping allows an entrepreneur to see whether or not the business is actually making a profit and appropriate measures are taken to improve on the business.

Acts as a tool for controlling assets in the business so as to eliminate the possibility of theft, fraud, pilferage, embezzlement.

## TECHNIQUES OF FINANCIAL STATEMENT ANALYSIS

Financial statement analysis is interpreted to determine the financial and operational performance of the business. A Number of methods or techniques are used to analyze the financial statement of the business. The following are the common methods or techniques which are widely used by the business enterprises

- Ratio analysis
- Cash flow statement
- Funds flow
- Trend analysis
- Comparative statement analysis

## FINANCIAL RATIOS

### Definition

Financial ratios are mathematical comparisons of financial statement accounts or categories. These relationships between the financial statement accounts help investors, creditors, and internal company management understand how well a business is performing and of areas needing improvement. Or

A financial ratio is a mathematical comparison between two or more items from business's balance sheet or income statement. These are used to measure the progress of the business, uncover trends, and point to potential problem areas. Bankers and investors often analyze these numbers to decide whether to lend you money or invest in your company.

Financial ratios are the most common and widespread tools used to analyze a business'

financial standing. They are also used to compare different companies in different industries. Since a ratio is simply a mathematical comparison based on proportions, big and small companies can use ratios to compare their financial information, to identify their strengths and weaknesses

### IMPORTANCE OF FINANCIAL RATIOS

They are useful indicators of a company's ability to manage short-term obligations as they provide important information about business strength. E.g. liquidity ratio

They help to measure the efficiency of a business i.e. how well it uses its assets. E.g. Leverage ratios which indicate the long-term financial strength of a business.

They are used to determine the Profitability of the business, by comparing profits to assets or equity.

Ratios help in analyzing the performance trends over a long period of time of the business.

They also help a business to compare the financial results to those of competitors.

Ratios assist the management in decision making regarding investment.

Financial ratios are used to assess the financial performance and determine the financial position of an enterprise e.g. through its profitability, liquidity, activity, leverage and other relevant indicators.

They help management to prepare budgets, to formulate policy, and to prepare the future plan of action.

### USERS OF FINANCIAL RATIOS

**Bankers and Lenders:** Use profitability, liquidity and investment because they want to know the ability of the borrowing business in regular scheduled interest payments and repayments of principal loan amount.

**Investors:** Use profitability and investment because they are more interested in profitability performance of business and safety & security of their investment and growth potential of their investment.

**Government:** Use profitability because government may use profit as a basis for taxation, grants and subsidies.

**Employees:** Use profitability, liquidity and activity because employees will be concerned with job security, bonus and continuance of business and wage bargaining.

**Customers:** Use liquidity because customers will seek reassurance that the business can survive in the short term and continue to supply.

**Suppliers:** Use liquidity because suppliers are more interested in knowing the ability of the business to settle its short-term obligations as and when they are due.

**Management:** Use all ratios because management is interested in all aspects i.e., both financial performance and financial condition of the business.

### TYPES OF RATIOS

. Financial ratios are often divided up into seven main categories:

Liquidity

Profitability

Solvency

Efficiency  
Market prospect  
Investment leverage  
Coverage

## LIQUIDITY RATIO

Current ratio

Current Ratio =

NB. It evaluates the ability of a business to pay short-term obligations using current assets

Acid Test Ratio =

Or

**Also known as "*quick ratio*", it measures the ability of a company to pay short-term obligations using the more liquid types of current assets or "quick assets" (cash, marketable securities, and current receivables).**

It Measures the ability of a business to pay its current liabilities using cash and marketable securities. Marketable securities are short-term debt instruments that are as good as cash. In many businesses a significant proportion of current assets may comprise of inventory. Inventory, by nature, cannot be converted into ready cash abruptly. The term liquid assets does not include inventory.

Hence *the term liquid or quick asset includes all the current assets minus inventory at prepaid expenses*

Net Working Capital = Current Assets - Current Liabilities

Determines if a company can meet its current obligations with its current assets; and how much excess or deficiency there is.

Example one

|                      | Shs      |
|----------------------|----------|
| Equity share capital | 2,00,000 |
| General reserve      | 90,000   |
| Sundry creditors     | 60,000   |
| Bills payable        | 20,000   |
| Bank overdraft       | 30,000   |
| Provision for tax    | 5,000    |
| Proposed dividend    | 10,000   |
| Outstanding salaries | 5,000    |
| Long term loans      | 60,000   |
| Land & building      | 80,000   |

|                        |          |
|------------------------|----------|
| Machinery              | 1,20,000 |
| Cash                   | 10,000   |
| Bank                   | 30,000   |
| Stock                  | 1,40,000 |
| Short-term investments | 25,000   |
| Sundry debtors         |          |
| Less provision         | 36,000   |
| Bills receivable       | 10,000   |
| Prepaid insurance      | 9,000    |
| Preliminary expenses   | 20,000   |

### Determine current ratio and quick asset ratio

#### Solution

##### Current ratio =

But Current assets are cash, bank, stock, investments, sundry debtors (net), bills receivable and prepaid insurance. = shs10,000 + 30,000 + 1,40,000 + 25,000 + 36,000 + 10,000 + 9,000 = shs2,60,000.

Current liabilities are sundry creditors, bills payable, bank overdraft, and provision for tax, proposed dividend and outstanding salaries

= 60,000 + 20,000 + 30,000 + 5,000 + 10,000 + 5,000  
= shs1,30,000

Current ratio = 2,60,000 / 1,30,000

= 2: 1

##### Quick ratio =

Quick assets = Current assets - (Stock + Prepaid expenses)

= 2,60,000 - (1,40,000 + 9,000)

= shs 1,11,000

Quick ratio = 1,11,000 / 1,30,000

= 0.85: 1

Interest Coverage: This ratio is calculated by dividing Profits before Interest and Taxes by total Interest Expense.

Asset to sales: This ratio is calculated by dividing Assets by Sales.

Dividend Payout. This ratio is calculated by dividing Dividends by Net Profit.

Current Debt/Total Assets. This ratio is calculated by dividing Current Liabilities by Total Assets.

### PROFITABILITY RATIOS

This is the measure of the ability of the business to generate sufficient revenue to finance its undertaking. The ratios include



### Gross profit ratio

**Gross profit ratio** is the ratio of gross profit to net sales i.e. sales less sales returns. The ratio thus reflects the margin of profit that a business is able to earn on its trading and manufacturing activity. It is the most commonly calculated ratio. It is employed for inter-firm comparison of trading results. It's given by:

Gross profit ratio = 100

#### Example:

Calculate gross profit ratio (GP Ratio) from the following particulars.

| Particulars   | Shs      | Particulars       | Shs    |
|---------------|----------|-------------------|--------|
| Sales         | 1,55,000 | Purchases         | 80,000 |
| Sales returns | 5,000    | Purchases returns | 10,000 |
| Opening stock | 40,000   | Closing stock     | 10,000 |

#### Solution:

Cost of goods sold = Opening stock + Net purchases - Closing stock

= 40,000 + 70,000 - 10,000

= 1,00,000

Net sales = 1,55,000 - 5,000

= 150,000

Gross profit = 1,50,000 - 1,00,000

= 50,000

Gross profit ratio =  $(50,000 / 1,50,000) \times 100$

= 33.33 %

Or markup is the gross profit expressed as a percentage of the cost of sale

i.e. markup =  $\text{gross profit} / \text{cost of sales} \times 100$

**Net profit ratio (NP ratio)** expresses the relationship between net profit after taxes and sales. This ratio is a measure of the overall profitability of the business.

The ratio indicates what portion of the net sales is left for the owners after all expenses have

Net profit ratio =  $\times 100$

#### Example:

From the following information calculate net profit ratio (NP ratio)

Total sales shs 520,000;

Sales returns shs 20,000;

Net profit shs 40,000

**Net sales** =  $(520,000 - 20,000) = 500,000$

**Net Profit Ratio** =  $[(40,000 / 500,000) \times 100]$

= 8%

**Return on investment** =  $\times 100$

Or

$\times 100$

**Profit to asset turn over** =  $\times 100$

Or

Profit to asset turn over =

## EFFICIENCY RATIOS

These ratios measure the level of efficiency of business activities. They indicate the number of times an asset is turned into sales. They include

### Inventory Turnover =

Represents the number of times inventory is sold and replaced. A high ratio indicates that the business is efficient in managing its inventories.

### Days Inventory Outstanding =

Inventory outstanding is also known as "*inventory turnover in days*". It represents the number of days inventory sits in the business. In other words, it measures the number of days from purchase of inventory to the sale of the same, the shorter the days the better.

### Stock turn over period

This ratio measures the average number of days stock is held before being sold off in a given period of time

Stock turn over = **x365 days**

### Debtors' turn over,

This is the ratio that shows the number of times cash collections are made in a given period of time

I.e. Rate of debtors' turn over =

### 5. Creditors' turn over

This measures the number of times a business pays its suppliers in a given period of time i.e. a year

I.e. creditor turnover =

NB. Creditors' turn over period = **x365days**

**Fixed asset turn over = x100**

Or fixed asset turn over =

## LEVERAGE RATIOS

### Debtor ratio (debt to asset ratio)

This Measures the portion of the business' assets that is financed by debt (obligations to third parties). Debt ratio can also be computed using the formula

Debt ratio =

### Equity Ratio

Equity ratio determines the portion of total assets provided by equity (i.e. owners' contributions and the business' accumulated profits). Equity ratio can also be

computed using the formula

Equity Ratio =

### **Debt-Equity Ratio**

This evaluates the capital structure of a company. That is to when the ratio is more than 1 implies that the company is a leveraged firm; less than 1 implies that it is a conservative one.

Debt-Equity Ratio =

### **Times Interest Earned**

Measures the number of times interest expense is converted to income, and if the company can pay its interest expense using the profits generated. EBIT is earnings before interest and taxes. It's given by

Times Interest Earned =

## **VALUATION AND GROWTH RATIOS**

### **Earnings per Share**

EPS shows the rate of earnings per share of common stock. A preferred dividend is deducted from net income to get the earnings available to common stockholders. It's given by

Earnings per Share =

### **Price-Earnings Ratio**

It's used to evaluate if a stock is over- or under-priced. A relatively *low P/E ratio* could indicate that the company is under-priced. Conversely, investors expect high growth rate from companies with *high P/E ratio*. It's given by

Price-Earnings Ratio =

### **Dividend Pay-out Ratio**

It determines the portion of net income that is distributed to owners. Not all income is distributed since a significant portion is retained for the next year's operations.

Dividend Pay-out Ratio =

### **Dividend Yield Ratio**

Measures the percentage of return through dividends when compared to the price paid for the stock. A high yield is attractive to investors who are after dividends rather than long-term capital appreciation. It's given by

Dividend Yield Ratio =

## **WORKED EXAMPLES one**

The following financial statements relates to melon enterprises LTD

### **MELON ENTERPRISES LTD**

Income statement for the year ended 30 June 20117

|                                |                    |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|
|                                | Shs                |
| Sales                          | 850,000,000        |
| Less cost of sales             | 610,000,000        |
| <b>Gross profit</b>            | <b>240,000,000</b> |
| Less operating expenses        |                    |
| Administrative costs           | 72,000,000         |
| Selling and distribution costs | 50,000,000         |
| Other costs                    | 18,000,000         |
| Total costs                    | 140,000,000        |
| Profits before tax             | 100,000,000        |
| Less taxation 30%              | 30,000,000         |
| <b>Profit after tax</b>        | <b>70,000,000</b>  |

### MELON ENTERPRISES LTD

#### Balance sheet

As at 30 June 20117

|                                      |                    |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|
| NET FIXED                            | SHS                |
| Motor vehicles                       | 120,500,000        |
| Land and premises                    | 100,000,000        |
| Furniture and fittings               | 80,400,000         |
| Equipment                            | 60,100,000         |
| <b>Total fixed assets</b>            | <b>361,000,000</b> |
| Current assets                       |                    |
| Inventory                            | 35,500,000         |
| Debtors                              | 64,900,000         |
| Prepayments                          | 6,200,000          |
| Bank                                 | 45,400,000         |
| Total current assets                 | 152,000,000        |
| <b>Total assets</b>                  | <b>513,000,000</b> |
| Capital and liabilities              |                    |
| Capital                              |                    |
| Owner`s equity                       | 200,500,000        |
| Liabilities                          |                    |
| 5year loan                           | 130,000,000        |
| Creditors                            | 152,500,000        |
| Unpaid taxes                         | 30,000,000         |
| <b>Total capital and liabilities</b> | <b>513,000,000</b> |

#### Required;

Compute the following ratios

Gross profit margin

Net profit margin

Profit on total asset ratio

Current ratio

Acid test ratio

Fixed asset turn over

## Debtor's turnover

The enterprise apply for loan of shs 40,000,000 repayable within six month  
Should the bank give given the current ratio?

## SOLUTION

$$\text{Gross profit margin} = \frac{\text{Gross Profit}}{\text{Net Sales}} \times 100$$

$$= \frac{11,240,000}{40,000,000} \times 100 = 28.24\% \text{ or } 28\%$$

$$\text{Net profit margin} = \frac{\text{Net Profit}}{\text{Net Sales}} \times 100 = \frac{3,240,000}{40,000,000} \times 100 = 8.24\% \text{ or } 8\%$$

$$\text{Profit on total asset ratio} = \frac{\text{Net Profit}}{\text{Total Assets}} = \frac{3,240,000}{21,000,000} = 0.1543 \text{ or } 15.43\%$$

Or

$$\text{Profit on total assets ratio} = \frac{\text{Net Profit}}{\text{Total Assets}} \times 100 = \frac{3,240,000}{21,000,000} \times 100 = 15.43\% \text{ or } 15\%$$

$$\text{Current ratio} = \frac{\text{Current Assets}}{\text{Current Liabilities}}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{But current liabilities} &= \text{creditors} + \text{unpaid tax} \\ &= 152,500,000 + 30,000,000 \\ &= 182,500,000 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Therefore current ratio} = \frac{152,500,000}{182,500,000} = 0.836$$

Or

$$\text{Current ratio} = \frac{152,500,000}{182,500,000} \times 100 = 83.6\%$$

$$\text{Acid test ratio} = \frac{\text{Current Assets} - \text{Inventory}}{\text{Current Liabilities}} = \frac{112,500,000}{182,500,000} = 0.617$$

Or

$$\text{Acid test ratio} = \frac{112,500,000}{182,500,000} \times 100 = 61.7\%$$

=

$$\times 100$$

$$= 64\%$$

$$\text{Fixed asset turn over} = \frac{\text{Net Sales}}{\text{Fixed Assets}} \times 100 = \frac{40,000,000}{168,000,000} \times 100 = 23.81\%$$

$$= 235.46\%$$

Or

$$\text{Fixed asset turn over} = \frac{40,000,000}{168,000,000} = 0.2381$$

$$\text{Debtors turn over} = \frac{\text{Net Sales}}{\text{Debtors}} \times 100 = \frac{40,000,000}{300,000} \times 100 = 13,333.33\%$$

Or

$$\text{Debtors turn over} = \frac{40,000,000}{300,000} = 133.33$$

The Bank should reject the loan application

The reason is that the business's current assets are less than the current liabilities

Or

The current asset ratio is below the standard ratio of 2:1

### EXAMPLE 2

The following balance was extracted from the final statements of JAK'S business at the end of the 2015

|                                    | Shs         |
|------------------------------------|-------------|
| Sales                              | 288,000,000 |
| Total fixed assets                 | 65,500,000  |
| Average debtors                    | 90,000,000  |
| Opening stock                      | 40,200,000  |
| Closing stock                      | 50,400,000  |
| Cost of sales                      | 201,600,000 |
| Total current assets               | 36,100,000  |
| Equity capital                     | 68,400,000  |
| Total current liabilities          | 16,800,000  |
| Net profit before interest and tax | 40,600,000  |
| Long term liabilities              | 38,500,000  |
| Interest expenses for the year     | 5,700,000   |

### Required;

Compute the following ratios

Gross profit margin

Stock turn over

Debtor's collection days

Leverage ratio

Working capital ratio

Net profit margin

Interest cover

### SOLUTION

Gross profit margin= **x100**

But gross profit =Net sales –cost of sales

Shs 288,000,000-201600, 000

86,400,000

= 30%

Stock turn over =

But average cost =

=45,300,000

=4.45 times

Debtors collection days=  
 $\frac{365}{3} = 114$  days

Leverage ratio =  $\frac{100}{100} = 100\%$

Interest cover = 7.12 times

Working capital ratio = 2.15:1

Net profit margin =  $\frac{100}{8.33} = 12.11\%$

X100

X100=12.11%

### Example 3

The following balances were extracted from BAM SHOPPING's books of account on 31 12 2017

| <b>PARTICULARS</b>       | <b>SHS</b> |
|--------------------------|------------|
| Net sales                | 20,000,000 |
| Net purchases            | 11,000,000 |
| Goods available for sale | 16,000,000 |
| Stock on 1.Jan 2017      | 5,000,000  |
| Stock on 31 Dec 2017     | 4,000,000  |
| Total operating expenses | 6,000,000  |
| Total fixed assets       | 8,000,000  |
| Debtors                  | 1,500,000  |
| Creditors                | 3,000,000  |
| Cash                     | 900,000    |
| Outstanding rent         | 1,000,000  |
| Bank                     | 1,600,000  |

### Required

Calculate and interpret the following ratios

- Inventory turnover ratio
- Credit payment period
- Rate of return on capital employed
- Stock turnover period
- Cash ratio
- Profit mark up

### Solution

Inventory turnover =

But cost of sales = goods available for sale – closing stock

= 2.3 or 3 times

Interpretation the business sells and replaces its stock 3 times in the trading period

ii) Credit payment period = x number of days in a year  
 $\times 365 \text{ days} = 99.5 \text{ days}$

Interpretation on average the business takes 100 days to pay its creditors

iii) Rate of returns on capital employed =  $\times 100$

But net profit = (net sales – cost of sales) – expenses

$\times 100 = 16.7\%$

Interpretation; for 100 shs of capital employed, the business gets shs 16.7 as net profits

iv). Stock turn over period x number of days in a year  
 $\times 365 \text{ days} = 137 \text{ days}$

Interpretation: the business holds stock for 137 days before its sold

Cash ratio = =  
 $= 0.625:1$

Interpretation: the business can clear 0.6 of its current liabilities using its absolute liquid assets

v) Profit margin =  $\times 100 = \times 100 = 66.6\%$  or 67%

Interpretation: for every shs 100 of cost of sales the business generates shs 67 as gross profits

The following information was extracted from the records of promela traders for the period ended 31/12/2016.

|                          | Shs        |
|--------------------------|------------|
| Inventory 01/01/2016     | 6,000,000  |
| Inventory 31/12/2016     | 5,000,000  |
| Inventory turnover ratio | 3 times    |
| Turnover                 | 30,500,000 |
| Net profit ratio         | 20%        |
| Delivery van             | 1,800,000  |
| Fixtures and fittings    | 1,000,000  |
| Debtors                  | 1,650,000  |
| Creditors                | 2,500,000  |
| Insurance due            | 1,500,000  |



|              |         |
|--------------|---------|
| Equipment    | 250,000 |
| Bank balance | 750,000 |
| Cash balance | 600,000 |

Required to

Calculate

Cost of sales

Net purchases

Goods available for sale

Total operating expenses

b) Compute and interpret

Current ratio

Quick asset ratio

Credit collection period in weeks

Fixed asset turnover ratio

Solution

Cost of sales = stock turn over x average stock

But average stock = shs5,500,000

Hence cost of sales =  $3 \times 5,500,000 = \text{shs } 16,500,000$

ii) Net purchases = cost of sales + closing stock - opening stock

= shs  $16,500,000 + 5,000,000 - 6,000,000$

= shs  $21,500,000 - 6,000,000$

Shs 15,500,000

iii) Goods available for sale = opening inventory + net purchases

$6,000,000 + 15,500,000$

Shs 21,500,000

iv) Total operating expenses = gross profit - net profit.

But gross profit = turn over - cost of sales = shs  $30,500,000 - 16,500,000 = \text{shs } 14,000,000$

Also net profit = net profit ratio x turn over =  $\frac{1}{3} \times 30,500,000 = \text{shs } 6,100,000$

Hence total operating expenses =  $14,000,000 - 6,100,000 = \text{shs } 7,900,000$

Current ratio

but current assets = stock + debtors + Bank balance + cash balance

Shs  $5,000,000 + 1,650,000 + 750,000 = 8,000,000$

Also current liabilities = creditors + insurance due

2,500,000 + 1,500,000

Shs 4,000,000

Current ratio = = 2:1

Interpretation: the business is in position to pay its current liabilities 2 times using its current assets

Quick ratio= ==

3:4 or 0.75: 1

Interpretation: the business does not have enough quick assets to clear its current liabilities since the ratio is below the standard ratio

### **Credit collection period in weeks**

Fixed asset turnover ratio ==

= 10:1

Interpretation: for every 1 shs invested in business it generates shs 10 as sales revenue

The following balances were extracted from MUKENE ' S books of accounts on 31/12/2015.

|                          | Shs (000) |
|--------------------------|-----------|
| Net sales                | 20,000    |
| Net purchases            | 11,000    |
| Goods available for sale | 16,000    |
| Stock (01.01.2015)       | 5,000     |
| Stock (31.12.2015)       | 4,000     |
| Total operating expenses | 6,000     |
| Total fixed assets       | 8,000     |
| Debtors                  | 1,500     |
| Creditors                | 3,000     |
| Cash                     | 900       |
| Accrued rent             | 1,000     |
| Bank                     | 1,600     |

### **Required:**

Calculate and interpret

Inventory turnover ratio

Credit payment period

Rate of return on employed capital

Stock turnover period

Cash ratio  
Profit marl – up

### SOLUTION

Inventory turnover (ratio)/Rate of stock turn/ stock turnover

= cost of sales

Average stock

Cost of sales = Goods available for sale – Closing stock

= 16,000,000 – 4,000,000

= Shs 12,000,000

Average stock =  $\frac{\text{opening stock} + \text{closing stock}}{2}$

=  $\frac{5,000,000 + 4,000,000}{2}$  = Shs 4,500,000

Inventory turnover ratio =  $\frac{12,000,000}{4,500,000}$   
= 2.7  
= 3 times / turns

Interpretation: The business sells and replaces its stock approximately 3 times in a trading period.

(ii) Credit payment period =  $\frac{\text{creditors}}{\text{Net purchases}}$  x Number of days / weeks/ months in a year

Net purchases

=  $\frac{\text{creditors}}{\text{Net purchases}}$  x Number of days in a year

=  $\frac{3,000,000}{11,000,000}$  x 365

= 99.5

= 100 days

Interpretation: On average the business takes 100 days to pay its creditors suppliers

(iii) Rate of return on employed capital

=  $\frac{\text{Net profit}}{\text{Employed capital}} \times 100$

Net profit = Gross profit – Total operating expenses  
= Net sales – Cost of sales) – 6,000,000

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= (20,000,000 - 12,000,000) - 6,000,000 \\
 &= 8,000,000 - 6,000,000 \\
 &= \text{Shs } 2,000,000
 \end{aligned}$$

Employed capital = Total fixed assets / fixed assets + working capital

But working capital = Total current assets – Total current liabilities.

Total current assets = Closing stock = Debtors = Cash + Bank

$$= 3,000,000 = 1,000,000$$

$$= \text{shs } 4,000,000$$

Working capital = 8,000,000 – 4,000,000

$$= \text{shs } 4,000,000$$

Employed capital = 8,000,000 + 4,000,000

$$\text{Shs } 12,000,000$$

Rate of return on employed capital =  $\frac{2,000,000}{12,000,000} \times 100$

$$16.7\%$$

### EXERCISE ONE

The following information relates to the books of dingi dingi entertainers as at 30 June 2012

|                    | Shs        |
|--------------------|------------|
| Net sales          | 4,500,000  |
| Cost of sales      | 3,225,000  |
| Salaries and wages | 600,000    |
| Discount received  | 150,000    |
| Discount allowed   | 225,000    |
| Machinery          | 40,000,000 |
| Debtors            | 7,200,000  |
| Creditors          | 12,000,000 |
| Cash at bank       | 8,000,000  |
| Bank over draft    | 3,200,000  |
| Closing stock      | 4,800,000  |

Calculate

Gross profit

Net profit

Liquidity

Quick acid ratio

### EXERCISE TWO

The following information was obtained from the books of wekasa enterprises as at 31 Dec 2015

OPENING STOCK 100,000

|                     |           |
|---------------------|-----------|
| Capital             | 1,000,000 |
| Cash                | 105,000   |
| Bank                | 425,000   |
| Premises            | 595,500   |
| Creditors           | 150,000   |
| 3year loan          | 500,000   |
| Wages and salaries  | 50,000    |
| Purchases           | 303,500   |
| Carriage inwards    | 100,000   |
| Motor van           | 330,000   |
| Returns out wards   | 60,000    |
| Debtors             | 92,500    |
| Sales               | 465,000   |
| Returns inwards     | 10,000    |
| Interest on loan    | 20,000    |
| Rent income         | 115,000   |
| Transport           | 25,000    |
| Rent expenses       | 30,000    |
| Drawings            | 131,500   |
| Machinery           | 75,000    |
| Commission on sales | 10,000    |
| Carriage outwards   | 20,000    |
| Commission income   | 135,000   |

#### **Additional information:**

Stock at 31 Dec 2015 was shs 60,000  
 Accrued rent shs 60,000  
 Wages shs 2,500 were paid in advance  
 Commission of shs 15, 000 was not yet received  
 Rent income of shs 50,000 was paid in advance  
 Depreciate machinery and motor van by 10% p.a on cost  
 Net profit is shs 78,500

Required to;

Prepare the balance sheet as at 31 DEC 2015

Calculate and interpret the following

Average collection period for debts  
 Number of days stock was held before selling  
 Rate of returns on capital employed  
 Rate of stock turn

#### **EXERCISE THREE**

The following balances were extracted from the financial statement of Nabikooli traders at the end of 2016

| <b>PARTICULARS</b> | <b>SHS</b> |
|--------------------|------------|
| Cash               | 2,010,000  |

|                          |            |
|--------------------------|------------|
| Bank                     | (600,000)  |
| Sales                    | 35,000,000 |
| Purchases                | 9,500,000  |
| Average stock            | 4,000,000  |
| Rate of stock turn       | 5 times    |
| Fixed assets             | 5,000,000  |
| Accounts payable         | 450,000    |
| Closing stock            | 2,500,000  |
| Accounts receivable      | 6,590,000  |
| Total operating expenses | 8,750,000  |
| Interest receivable due  | 50,000     |

Required to:

Calculate;

Cost of sales

Gross profit

Net sales

Opening stock

Net profit ratio

Working capital

Stock holding period in weeks

Rate of creditors turn over

Quick asset ratio

Debtor's collection period in days

#### EXERCISE FOUR

The following balances were extracted from the financial statements of kaliro metal works at the end of the year 2017

| Details                  | shs         |
|--------------------------|-------------|
| Turnover                 | 160,000,000 |
| Net purchases            | 84,000,000  |
| Accounts receivable      | 7,000,000   |
| Accounts payable         | 5,800,000   |
| Stock 1/1/2017           | 3,600,000   |
| Stock 31/12/2017         | 4,200,000   |
| Total operating expenses | 12,000,000  |
| Noncurrent assets        | 14,400,000  |
| Owners` equity           | 48,000,000  |
| Bank                     | 3,200,000   |
| Cash                     | 1,000,000   |
| Outstanding rent income  | 2,400,000   |
| Accrued electricity      | 2,000,000   |
| Interest on loan expense | 1,200,000   |
| Bank loan                | 4,000,000   |

Required: compute and interpret the following ratios for the business

Profit mark up

Profit margin  
 Net profit ratio  
 Credit payment period in weeks  
 Debtors' days  
 Return on equity  
 Inventory turnover ratio  
 Stock turnover period  
 Current ratio  
 Interest cover ratio  
 Noncurrent assets turnover  
 Gearing /leverage ratio  
 Cash ratio

## 2 CASH FLOW STATEMENTS

### DEFINITION OF CASH FLOW STATEMENT

'Cash Flows' implies movement of cash in and out due to some non-cash items.

### BENEFITS OF CASH FLOW STATEMENT

It provides a basis to assess the ability of the enterprise to generate cash and cash equivalents and the needs of the enterprise to utilize those cash flows.

A cash flow statement provides information that enables users to evaluate the changes in net assets of an enterprise, its financial structure (including its liquidity and solvency)

Cash flow information is useful in assessing the ability of the enterprise to generate cash and cash equivalents, which enables users to develop models to assess and compare the present value of the future cash flows of different enterprises.

It is useful in checking the accuracy of past assessments of future cash flows and in examining the relationship between profitability and net cash flow and the impact of changing prices.

**Cash flow statement help in making financial decisions. E.g.** buying capital equipment using cash or pay workers.

It helps the financial managers to make a cash flow projection for immediate future, e.g. basing on the past financial projections.

Cash Flow Statement is an important financial tool for the management to make an estimate relating to cash for the near future.

It helps the internal management to determine the financial policy to be adopted in future, since it supplies information relating to funds, e.g., taking decision about the replacement of fixed assets or repayment of long-term liabilities etc

It reveals the cash position for the business, as it shows the movement of cash in the business i.e., whether there is any increase in cash or decrease in cash and the reasons explaining so.

Cash flow statement helps to identify the main financial sources for the business that is from where cash inflows have arisen within a particular period and also shows the various activities where in the cash was utilized as Cash Flow

Statement does not always represent the real liquid position.

Cash flow statement is significant to management for proper cash planning and maintaining a proper matching between cash inflows and outflows. As

Cash flow statement reports the amount of cash received during the period through various financing activities, such as issue of shares, debentures and raising long-term loan.

Cash flow statement helps in appraising of the various capital investment programs to determine their profitability and viability.

### **Limitations of Cash Flow Statement:**

Cash Flow Statement is, no doubt, is an important tool in financial management which explains the movement of funds in various ways of a firm. It assists the management to understand the amount of capital blocked up in a specific segment of a firm. Although the Cash Flow Statement performs as an important financial tool, it is even not free from limitations.

#### **Some of them are given below:**

Cash Flow Statement fails to present the net income of a firm since it does not consider non-cash item.

It is neither a substitute of Funds Flow Statement nor an Income Statement. So, the functions which are performed by the Funds Flow Statement or Income Statement cannot be done by the Cash Flow Statement.

### **Terms**

**Cash**, it comprises cash on hand and demand deposits with banks.

**Cash equivalents**, these are short term, highly liquid investments that are readily convertible into known amounts of cash.

**Cash flows**, these are inflows and outflows of cash and cash equivalents.

**Operating activities**, these are the principal revenue-producing activities of the enterprise and other activities that are not investing or financing activities.

**Investing activities**, these are the acquisition and disposal of long-term assets and other investments not included in cash equivalents.

**Financing activities**, these are activities that result in changes in the size and composition of the owners' capital (including preference share capital in the case of a company) and borrowings of the enterprise.

**Cash inflow**, these are Receipt of cash from a non-cash item.

**Cash out flows**; this is cash payment in respect to in terms such as, purchase of machinery by paying cash.

### **CLASSIFICATION OF ACTIVITIES FOR THE PREPARATION OF CASH FLOW**

There are activities of an enterprise result into cash flows (inflows or receipts and outflows or payments). These activities are to be classified into three categories:

Operating,

Investing,

Financing activities

### **OPERATING ACTIVITIES**

Cash flows from operating activities are primarily derived from the main activities of the



enterprise. They generally result from the transactions and other events that enter into the determination of net profit or loss.

**Cash Inflows resulting from operating activities include,**

- Cash receipts from sale of goods and the rendering of services,
- Cash receipts from royalties,
- Fees,
- Commissions
- Loan acquisition
- Sale of long term asset,
- And any other income that businesses receive

**Cash Outflows resulting from operating activities include;**

- Cash payments to suppliers for goods and services,
- Cash payments to and on behalf of the employees,
- Cash payments to an insurance enterprise for premiums,
- Claims,
- Payment for policy benefits,
- Cash payments of income taxes,
- Interest payments on acquired loans,
- Payments for utilities
- Purchase of fixed assets

## **INVESTING ACTIVITIES**

Transactions related to long-term investment are (investing activities).

Separate disclosure of cash flows from investing activities is important because they represent the extent to which expenditures have been made for resources intended to generate future income and cash flows. Hence

**Cash Inflows resulting from Investing Activities include;**

- Cash receipt from disposal of fixed assets,
- Cash receipt from the repayment of advances or loans made to third parties (except in case of financial enterprise).
- Cash receipt from disposal of shares, warrants or debt instruments of other enterprises except those held for trading purposes.
- Interest received in cash from loans and advances.
- Dividend received from investments in other enterprises.

**Cash Outflows from investing activities;**

- Cash payments to acquire fixed assets,
- Cash payments to acquire shares, warrants or debt instruments of other enterprises other than the instruments those held for trading purposes.
- Cash advances and loans made to third party (other than advances and loans made by a financial enterprise wherein it is operating activities).

## **FINANCING ACTIVITIES**

Financing activities relate to long-term funds or capital of an enterprise, e.g., cash proceeds from issue of equity shares, debentures, raising long-term bank loans, repayment of bank loan, etc. here;

**Cash Inflows from financing activities include;**

- Cash proceeds from issuing shares (equity or/and preference).

Cash proceeds from issuing debentures, loans, bonds and other short/  
Long-term borrowings

**Cash Outflows from financing activities include;**

Cash repayments of amounts borrowed.

Interest paid on debentures and long-term loans and advances.

Dividends paid on equity and preference capital.

Components of Balance sheet

Balances

Total inflows

Total out flows

Net cash position

**EXAMPLE ONE**

The following projections relates to makalanda traders for the 2017

Share capital shs 600,000 as 1 march 2017

Cash sales for March 2017 shs 8,250,000 and expected to increase by shs750,000

Monthly debts to be collected are shs 2,000,000 and expected to increase by shs 200,000 per month

A loan worth shs 7500,000 to acquired from tropical bank in April 2017

Monthly credit sale shs 4,000,000, But 60% will be paid in the month of sale and balance to be paid in the following month.

Start up equipments worth shs 7,500,000 to be bought in April 2017

Monthly expenses for servicing of refrigerators are expected to be shs 200,000

Monthly payments are salaries shs 2,250,000 security shs 750, 000, insurance shs 225,000

Monthly utility bills of shs 750,000 are to be made

Monthly loan repayment shs 900,000 will start in may

Purchases are expected to shs 2,000,000 monthly

**Required;**

Prepare a cash flow statement for makalanda for the period from May to June 2017

Give any five importance of the cash flow statement to kalanda traders

**MAKALANDA TRADERS`**

Cash flow statement

For the period from March to June 2017

| DETAILS | MARCH | APRIL | MAY | JUNE |
|---------|-------|-------|-----|------|
|         | SHS   | SHS   | SHS | SHS  |

|                            |                   |                   |                   |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Balance b/f                |                   | 775,000           | 9,800,000         | 18,150,000        |
| Add cash inflows:          |                   |                   |                   | 0                 |
| Share capital              | 600,000           |                   |                   |                   |
| Cash sales                 | 8,250,000         | 900,000           | 900,000           |                   |
| Receipts from debtors      | 2,000,000         | 2,200,000         | 2,400,000         | 900,000           |
| Loan                       |                   | 7,500,000         |                   | 2,600,000         |
| Credit sales               | 2,400,000         | 4,000,000         | 4,000,000         |                   |
| <b>Total cash inflows</b>  |                   |                   |                   | 4,000,000         |
|                            | <b>13,250,000</b> | <b>21,675,000</b> | <b>24,125,000</b> | <b>34,125,000</b> |
| Less cash outflows:        |                   |                   |                   | 0                 |
| Start up equipment         |                   | 7,500,000         |                   |                   |
| Servicing refrigerator     | 200,000           | 200,000           | 200,000           |                   |
| Salary                     | 2,250,000         | 2,250,000         | 2,250,000         | 200,000           |
| Security                   | 750,000           | 750,000           | 750,000           | 2,250,000         |
| Insurance                  | 225,000           | 225,000           | 225,000           | 750,000           |
| Utilities                  | 750,000           | 750,000           | 750,000           | 225,000           |
| Startup expenses           | 6,300,000         |                   |                   | 750,000           |
| Loan repayment             |                   |                   | 900,000           |                   |
| Purchases                  | 2,000,000         | 2,000,000         | 2,000,000         | 900,000           |
| <b>Total cash outflows</b> |                   |                   |                   | 2,000,000         |
|                            | <b>12,475,000</b> | <b>13,675,000</b> | <b>7,050,000</b>  | <b>7,050,000</b>  |
| Net cash position          | 775,000           | 9,800,000         | 18,1150,000       | 26,675,000        |

## EXAMPLE TWO

Mbale maize millers had the following projections for the year 2018

Opening cash balance as at 1 January 2018 shs 2,200,000

Sales in kg;

January 90,000

February 100,000

March 80,000

April 20,000, each kg is to be sold at shs 500 on cash basis.

The business plans to obtain a loan of shs 10,000,000 at an interest rate of 15% from Bank of Baroda. The loan is in two installments shs 6,000,000 in February and shs 4,000,000 in April.

Receipts from debtors are projected at shs 2, 000, 000, shs 900,000 and shs 400,000 from the months of February, March and April respectively.

Purchases of raw materials in kgs is projected as follows January 6000, February 7000, March 8000 and April. The material is expected to cost shs 2000 per kg.

Labour costs for January is shs 2, 000, 000, February shs 1,800,000, March shs 1,700,000 and April shs 1,950,000.

Production expenses are projected as January shs 500, 000, February shs 400,000, March shs 300,000 and April shs 450,000.

Monthly administrative and marketing expenses are shs 300,000.

A generator is to be bought at shs 20,000,000 on credit in January. 50% of the cost is to be paid in March and the balance in April 2018.

Provision for bad debts and uncertainties is provided for at shs 70,000,000

Required: prepare Mbale maize millers cash flow statement for the months of January, February, March and April 2018

Suggest ways of minimizing cash deficit in the business

### **MBALE MAIZE MILLERS'**

#### **Cash flow statement**

For the months of January, February, March and April 2018

| DETAILS               | JANUARY<br>Shs | FEBRUARY<br>Shs | MARCH<br>Shs | APRIL<br>Shs |
|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| Balance b/f           | 2,200,000      | 32,400,000      | 73,900,000   | 86,500,000   |
| Add cash inflows      |                |                 |              |              |
| Cash sales            | 45,000,000     | 50,000,000      | 40,000,000   | 10,000,000   |
| Loan                  |                | 6,000,000       |              | 4,000,000    |
| Receipts from debtors |                | 2,000,000       | 900,000      | 400,000      |

|                                       |            |            |             |             |
|---------------------------------------|------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| Total cash inflows                    | 47,200,000 | 90,400,000 | 114,800,000 | 100,900,000 |
| Less <b>CASH OUTFLOWS</b>             |            |            |             |             |
| Purchase of raw materials             | 12,000,000 | 14,000,000 |             |             |
| Labour costs                          | 2,000,000  | 1,800,000  | 16,000,000  | 18,000,000  |
| Production expenses                   | 500,000    | 400,000    | 1,700,000   | 1,950,000   |
| Administrative and marketing expenses | 300,000    | 300,000    | 300,000     | 450,000     |
| Purchase of generator                 |            |            | 300,000     | 300,000     |
| Total cash outflows                   | 14,800,000 | 16,500,000 | 10,000,000  | 10,000,000  |
| Net cash position                     |            |            | 28,300,000  | 30,700,000  |
|                                       | 32,400,000 | 73,900,000 | 86,500,000  | 70,200,000  |

### EXAMPLE THREE

The following were projections of John Musoga Traders for the months of March, April, May and June 2017

The business had a net cash deficit of shs 60,000,000 at the end of February 2017

Expected monthly cash sales are to amount to shs 20,000,000. The cash sales are expected to decrease by 20% after the first two months. Credit sales were projected at shs 8,000,000 monthly with 60% of payments expected in the month of sale and the balance in the following months less 10% discount.

Monthly cash purchases are expected to be shs 12,000,000. This was expected to increase by 12% monthly basing on projected demand.

Monthly credit purchases are expected to be 40% of total monthly sales whose payments are to be made in the following month less 5% discount.

A monthly salary for 20 workers was expected to be shs 400,000 per worker. Two workers are to be terminated at the end of the second month and no replacement is expected to be made.

The business planned to get a loan of shs 16,000,000 in the first month with a repayment grace period of one month after acquisition. Its payable is in two equal installments with an interest rate of 10% payable on reducing balance method.

The business planned to sell old machinery worth shs 4,000,000 in May and receive initial payment of shs 1,800,000 and the balance in the following month.

The depreciation is at a rate of 5% per annum

Rent receivable was to increase by 10% monthly. Rent received at the end of February was shs 1,000,000

A cooler worth shs 10,000,000 was to be bought in March on hire purchase basis. Down payment of shs 4,000,000 was to be made and the balance to be paid in the ratio of 2/4, 1/4 and 25% the coming month repetitively

Advertisements of shs 3,000,000 were to be paid for at the end of June 2017

Creative sales persons are to receive commission of 5% of the month's cash sales revenue

Any cash shortage is to be offset with debenture at the beginning of the next month with an interest rate of 10% per month for 4 months payable together with the debenture after 4 months from the month of debenture acquisition

### Required

Prepare the cash flow statement for the business for the period of March to June 2017

Comment on the trend of net cash position of the business

Advise the business on the measures to adopt to overcome any cash deficit

### JOHN MUSOGA TRADERS CASH FLOW STATEMENT FOR THE MONTHS OF MARCH, APRIL, MAY AND JUNE 2017

| DETAILS | MARCH SHS | APRIL SHS | MAY SHS | JUNE SHS |
|---------|-----------|-----------|---------|----------|
|         |           |           |         |          |

|                             |                     |                    |                     |                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Cash balance                | (60,000,000)        | (43,100,000)       | (7,430,000)         | (18,221,800)        |
| Add cash inflows;           |                     |                    |                     |                     |
| Cash sales                  | 20,000,000          | 20,000,000         | 16,000,000          | 16,000,000          |
| Receipts from debtors       | 4,800,000           | 8,000,000          | 8,000,000           | 8,000,000           |
| Loan                        | 16,000,000          |                    |                     |                     |
| Rent receivable             | 1,100,000           | 1,210,000          | 1,331,000           | 1,464,100           |
| Sale of old machinery       |                     |                    | 1,800,000           | 2,200,000           |
| Debenture                   |                     | 43,100,000         | 17,430,000          | 18,221,800          |
| <b>Total cash inflows</b>   | <b>18,100,000</b>   | <b>29,210,000</b>  | <b>27,131,000</b>   | <b>22,664,100</b>   |
| <b>Less :cash out flows</b> |                     |                    |                     |                     |
| Cash purchases              | 12,000,000          | 13,440,000         | 15,052,800          | 16,859,136          |
| Payment to creditors        |                     | 11,200,000         | 1,552,800           | 16,859,136          |
| Workers salaries            | 8,000,000           | 8,000,000          | 7,200,000           | 7,200,000           |
| Loan principal payment      |                     | 8,000,000          |                     | 8,000,000           |
| Interest on loan            |                     | 1,600,000          |                     | 800,000             |
| Purchase of cooler          | 4,000,000           | 3,000,000          | 1,500,000           | 1,500,000           |
| Advertisements              |                     |                    |                     | 3,000,000           |
| Commission                  | 1,000,000           | 1,000,000          | 800,000             | 800,000             |
| <b>Total cash out flows</b> | <b>25,000,000</b>   | <b>36,640,000</b>  | <b>45,352,800</b>   | <b>47,759,136</b>   |
| <b>Net cash position</b>    | <b>(43,100,000)</b> | <b>(7,430,000)</b> | <b>(18,221,800)</b> | <b>(20,095,036)</b> |

|  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|

### **NET CASH POSITION**

John musoga had a deficit of shs 43,100,000 by the end of March 2017

It reduced to a deficit of shs 7,430,000 by the end of April 2017

The business also had a deficit of shs 18 221,800 by the end of May

The business performance for four months was not good

### **WAYS OF REDUCING DEFICIT**

By postponing increase in expenditures e.g. salaries

Selling off some of the fixed assets

Increasing on cash sales

Speeding up debt collection

Selling on cash only

Obtaining loan from low interest rate sources

Laying off some workers

Negotiating for longer credit period for supplies

### **EXAMPLE FOUR**

The following information relates to projections made by Mbale vendors' association for the months of January, February, March and April 2018

Projected cash and bank balances as at December shs 20,000,000

Sales will be both cash and credit. January cash sales will be 800 units at price of shs 10,000 each. Thereafter, cash sales will increase at a rate of 5% per month. Credit sales for each month are expected to be shs 5,500,000. Debtors will be expected to pay in the month of sale.

The business plans to buy 15 computers at shs 650,000 each in March. And import duty of 5% on total cost will be paid in addition.

Monthly expected expenses and payments include salaries and wages shs 30,000,000, machine servicing shs 300,000, depreciation shs 100,000. Salaries for April will be paid in the month of March.

The business is paying back a loan of shs 10,000,000 previously obtained. Monthly installments amount to shs 2,000,000 per month starting in February. The loan attracts interest of shs 100,000 per month also payable starting February

The business will buy 900 units of raw materials at shs 6,000 each in the month of January. The quantity of raw materials is expected to increase by 10% every month.

Purchase of raw materials is strictly on cash basis.

The business expects to receive shs 10,000,000 as a donation in April and plans to sell off an old motor van at shs 9,000,000 in March.

Required; prepare Mbale vendors' association's cash flow statement for the period of January to April 2018

### **MBALE VENDORS' ASSOCIATION'S**

#### **Cash flow statement**



For the period of January, February, March and April 2018

| Details                    | January shs       | February shs      | March shs          | April Shs           |
|----------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| Balances b/f               | 20,000,000        | (2,200,000 )      | (26,640,000)       | (75,851,000)        |
| Add cash inflows           |                   |                   |                    |                     |
| Cash sales                 | 8,000,000         |                   |                    |                     |
| Receipt from debtors       | 5,500,000         | 8,400,000         | 8,820,000          | 9,261,000           |
| Cash donations             |                   | 5,500,000         | 5,500,000          | 5,500,000           |
| Sale of old vehicle        |                   |                   |                    | 10,000,000          |
| <b>Total cash outflows</b> |                   |                   | 9,000,000          |                     |
| Less cash outflows         | <b>33,500,000</b> | <b>11,700,000</b> | <b>(3,320,000)</b> | <b>(51,090,500)</b> |
| Purchase of computer       |                   |                   |                    |                     |
| Import duty                |                   | 9,750,000         |                    |                     |
| Salaries and wages         |                   | 487,500           |                    |                     |
| Machine servicing          | 30,000,000        | 30,000,000        | 60,000,000         |                     |
| Loan repayment             | 300,000           | 300,000           | 300,000            |                     |
| Loan interest payment      |                   | 2,000,000         | 2,000,000          | 300,000             |
| Purchase of raw materials  |                   | 100,000           | 100,000            | 2,000,000           |
| <b>Total cash outflows</b> | <b>5,400,000</b>  | <b>5,940,000</b>  | <b>6,534,000</b>   | <b>100,000</b>      |
| Net cash position          |                   |                   |                    | 7,187,400           |
|                            | <b>35700,000</b>  | <b>38,340,000</b> | <b>79,171,500</b>  | <b>6,677,900</b>    |
|                            | 2,200,000         | 26,640,000        |                    |                     |

### EXAMPLE FIVE

Nkoma trading company ltd which plans to start a business has availed the

following projected details for the first six months of the year 2017

Cash at bank shs 4,000,000 at 1 January 2017

Cash sales for January 2016 shs 5,500,000. the sales are expected to increase by shs 500,000 every month. All sales will be by cash

Capitalization loan to be acquired from bank of Baroda in February, 2017 shs 5,000,000

Purchases of startup assets during the month of February 2017 shs 5,000,000

Monthly payments starting with January 2017, salaries and wages shs 1,500,000, rent shs 500,000 advertising shs 150,000

Pre-operating expenses to be paid January 2017 shs 200,000

Purchases occur in the month of sale are expected to be 75% of each month's projected sales. Purchases will be paid for after one month

### NKOMA TRADING COMPANY LTD'S

#### CASH FLOW STATEMENT

FOR THE MONTHS OF JANUARY, FEBRUARY, MARCH, APRIL MAY AND JUNE 2016

| PARTICULARS                 | JANUARY<br>SHS   | FEBRUARY<br>SHS   | MARCH<br>SHS      | APRIL<br>SHS      | MAY<br>SHS        | JUNE<br>SHS       |
|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Balance b/f                 | -                | 3,150,000         | 7,000,000         | 7,225,000         | 7,575,000         | 8,050,000         |
| Add cash inflows;           |                  |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |
| Share capital               | 4,000,000        |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |
| Cash sales                  | 5,500,000        | 6,000,000         | 6,500,000         | 7,000,000         | 7,500,000         | 8,000,000         |
| Capitalization              |                  | 5,000,000         |                   |                   |                   |                   |
| <b>Total cash inflows</b>   | <b>9,500,000</b> | <b>14,150,000</b> | <b>13,500,000</b> | <b>14,225,000</b> | <b>15,075,000</b> | <b>16,050,000</b> |
| <b>Less cash out flows;</b> |                  |                   | <b>0</b>          | <b>0</b>          | <b>0</b>          | <b>0</b>          |
| Purchase up startup assets  |                  | 5,000,000         |                   |                   |                   |                   |
| Salaries and wages          | 1,500,000        | 1,500,000         |                   |                   |                   |                   |
| Rent                        | 500,000          | 500,000           | 1,500,000         | 1,500,000         | 1,500,000         | 1,500,000         |
| Advertising                 | 150,000          | 150,000           | 500,000           | 500,000           | 500,000           | 500,000           |
| Pre operating expenses      | 4,200,000        |                   | 150,000           | 150,000           | 150,000           | 150,000           |
| Loan repayment              |                  |                   |                   |                   |                   | 600,000           |

|                            |                  |                  |                  |                   |                  |                  |
|----------------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Purchases                  |                  |                  | 4,125,000        | 4,500,000         | 4,875,000        | 5,250,000        |
| <b>Total cash outflows</b> |                  |                  |                  |                   |                  |                  |
| <b>Net cash position</b>   |                  |                  |                  |                   |                  |                  |
|                            | <b>6,350,000</b> | <b>7,150,000</b> | <b>6,275,000</b> | <b>76,650,000</b> | <b>7,025,000</b> | <b>8,000,000</b> |
|                            | <b>3,150,000</b> | <b>7,000,000</b> | <b>7,225,000</b> | <b>7,575,000</b>  | <b>8,050,000</b> | <b>8,050,000</b> |

### Uses of cash flow to the business

It enables the business to forecast cash challenges in advance

It enables management to compare actual with the projections.

It portrays the ability of the business to repay loan obligations

It's used to show changes in the net cash positions of the business from one period to another

It enables the business to identify the various needs and provides sources of funding

It facilitates proper planning for the business regarding investment decisions

### EXERCISE ONE

The following projections relate to Mbale AGRO chemicals enterprises during the months of May, June, July and August 2017

On May 1, 2017, the enterprise had a cash balance of shs 40,000,000 and bank balance of shs (8,000,000)

Outputs of 600 units, 750 units and 950 units each at shs 1,200 were to be sold in the months of May, June, July, and August on cash basis

Monthly credit sales were projected to be 25% of cash sales but payment would be received next month less 5% discount.

Donations were projected as follows; May shs 1,000,000, June shs 1,800,000, July 1,500,000, August 3,000,000 (in form of physical goods).

The business receives monthly rent income from its property .rent received on 30 June was shs 600,000 but this was expected to increase by 10% after one month. Inputs of 500,800,1100,14 units were to purchases at shs 950 each on cash basis

Monthly expenses were projected as follow; utilities shs 250,000, VAT shs 180,000 and advertising shs 100,000.however no VAT was paid in July.

Credit purchases of shs 900,000 were made in June,the businesshas a policy Of paying for credit purchases in 2 equal installments after one month.

The business has a policy of paying a 5% sales commission on the total monthly sales. No commission was paid in the first two months.

Required: prepare mbale agro chemical cash flow statement for four months

Advise the enterprise on managing a cash surplus

## EXERCISE TWO

Mooni electronic centre presented the following cash inflows and cash outflows for the month of August 2017

| August 2017                    | shs                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| Balance b/d                    | 8,400,000          |
| <b>Cash inflows:</b>           |                    |
| Cash sales                     | 250,000,000        |
| Cash collected from debtors    | 43,000,000         |
| Loan from centenary bank       | 30,000,000         |
| Penalties for delayed payments | 1,500,000          |
| Commission income              | 6,000,000          |
| Interest on cash deposits      | 500,000            |
| Donations and grants received  | 30,000,000         |
| <b>Total cash inflow</b>       | <b>369,400,000</b> |
| <b>Cash outflows</b>           |                    |
| Purchases of stock             | 110,000,000        |
| Labour costs                   | 60,000,000         |
| Power and utilities            | 5,000,000          |
| Administrative costs           | 1,500,000          |
| Payments of creditors          | 50,000,000         |
| Purchase of machinery          | 21,000,000         |
| <b>Total outflows</b>          | <b>247,500,000</b> |

## Additional information

The following projections were provided for the months of September, October and November 2017.

Cash sales revenue is expected to increase by 5% in September and October. It will drop by shs 500,000 in the month of November.

Cash collections from debtors will increase by 10% in September and October.

No cash will be received from debtors in the month of November

No further loans will be received until December 2017

Commission income is expected to double in the month of September and reduce by 1/3 of September's commission income in the next months.

The business will continue receiving interest on deposits equivalent to what was received in August

Donations and grants were received only in August and no further penalties on delayed payments will be charged.

Decapitalisation of assets will be done in September and this will generate shs 13,000,000.

Cash purchase of stock will be maintained at the same level in September and October. However it will drop by shs 10,000,000 in the month of November.

Labour costs for September October and November will also be the same as that of August

Power and utilities will also be the same as they appear in August.

There will be an increase of shs 500,000 monthly in administrative costs

The business is expected to start paying corporation tax every month of shs 2,000,000. However this will be paid as a single sum in November

The loan acquired in August will be paid back in six installments starting in the month of September

The business will pay a monthly interest on the loan at a rate of 5% on reducing balance of starting in September.

The business will donate shs 1,000,000 to good hope children centre in September. This will increase by 4% every month

The proprietor is expected to use shs 1,600,000 every month for family needs starting in October 2017

Required: prepare a cash flow statement for Mooni electronic centre for the months of September, October, and November 2017.

### EXERCISE THREE

The following information relates to the books of Kambozi Enterprise Ltd projection for the months of July, August, September and October 2018

On July 1 2018 cash balance is 26,000,000

Credit sales are projected to be shs 40,000,000 monthly. However the business credit policy is 60% in the month of sale and balance in the following month for all the months.

The business hopes to acquire a loan in the month of August and October 2018.

Monthly cash sales are projected to be shs 60,000,000. A commission of 10% is paid to salesmen for the work done each time cash is received

Monthly cash purchases worth shs 40,500,000 is expected to be made

A delivery van is to be bought in the month of August at a cost of shs 35,000,000.

Monthly wage bill is estimated to be shs 12,500,000 and expected to increase in the month of October

A loan interest of 5% per month is payable starting in the month of acquisition of the loan

Expansion of the business premises is expected to cost \$2000 and the price of

the dollar is shs3500 in the month of July and \$100 is set to be spent in the month of August.

General expenses are expected to be 7,100,000 per month. All expenses are paid in the month in which they are incurred.

The business is set to pay income tax in the month of September of shs 12,000,000.

Required: prepare cash flow statement for kamboozi enterprise ltd for the months of July, August, September and October 2018

Comment on the net cash position of the business

#### EXERCISE FOUR

Given the following information of BIG BOSS Enterprises LTD

On 1<sup>st</sup> June 2015, the business had cash in hand shs 5 million.

Cash sales 10 million was expected every month.

Credit sales are expected to be shs 6 million per month. Debtors will be expected to pay in the month of sale.

Monthly cash purchases projected to be shs 8 million.

The business plans to get a loan of shs 4 million in the first month at a monthly interest of 10% payable beginning the following month on reducing balance while the principal is to be paid in four equal installments beginning from the third month.

Monthly salary and wage bill estimated at shs 1 million

Rend income is expected to be shs shs 2 million per month and this will increase by 20% after the second month.

Monthly incomes from grants and donations are projected at shs 3 million and this will reduce by 10% after three months.

Corporation tax is estimated to be shs 500,000 per month but will increase by 10% every month.

The business plans to buy an office safe at shs 8 million in the first month making down payment of 49%. The remaining amount is to be paid in the ratio of 5:3:2 in the following months.

The business hopes to issue a debenture of shs 4million every month.

Monthly expected expenses include;

|                    | shs       |
|--------------------|-----------|
| Salaries and wages | 1,000,000 |
| Advertising        | 200,000   |
| Depreciation       | 100,000   |

Xiii The business shall finance any cash shortfall with a loan in the following month.

#### Required:

Prepare a monthly cash flow statement for four months period.

Advise the proprietor on what to do in case of a deficit in the net cash position.

### **Controls to manage the flow of funds in a business**

Reduce or increase an inventory to match sales requirements

Negotiate with suppliers for an extension of payment dates

Shop for favourable interest rates funds and availability of fund to borrow.

Control receivables to collect money as soon as possible

Analyze expenses to reduce costs and eliminate waste

Raise prices to increase gross profits or lower them to increase sales volume

Develop good purchasing practices to take advantage of special price and discounts

Take less salary out of the business

Learn to use forecasts to develop useful cash budgets so that cash is able to meet all future obligations

Do not use cash from the business for personal use

### **BUSINESS TAXES**

A tax is a compulsory charge levied by the government or any other competent authority on persons (individuals, corporations or other legal entities) or on business in order to finance government activities. It is the amount of money paid by a business to the taxing central government or the local government.

Taxation is the process through the governments obtains money from eligible persons by application of the law. In Uganda, the role is performed by Uganda revenue authority (URA) for the central government revenue and local administrations for local government taxes.

#### **Importance of taxation in a country**

Taxes are major sources of government revenue to finance the provision of social services and other development services/projects.

It encourages development of local industries and protects them against foreign competition with a view to providing employment and saving foreign exchange, by imposing high duties on competing imports.

Taxes help to improve on the balance of payment position e.g. government can increase import duties on certain commodities to discourage their importation.

It protects society from undesirable or harmful products and industries by imposing high taxes on them, for instance excise duty on cigarettes and beer as well as environmental levy on used vehicles.

Taxes are used to reduce income inequalities in an economy thus ensuring economic stability through stable prices in the economy. This is achieved by levying high taxes on people's incomes.

To finance Government re-current and development expenditure, i.e. paying salaries for civil servants and funding long term projects such as construction of schools, hospitals and roads.

it's used to regulate demand and supply in the economy in times of inflation.

It encourages export of goods and services by reducing or removing tax on the export in order to make them more competitive in the world market.

Taxation may enable a country to become self-reliant and self-sustaining through the various taxes that may be imposed. Such taxes help to reduce the need for borrowing.

To influence allocation of resources, this is done by taxing more sectors that are not a priority and giving tax incentive to priority sectors.

Taxes are used to reduce regional imbalances, this is achieved by encouraging firms to set up across the country through tax incentives

### Principles of taxation

These refer to rules/guidelines which are followed when developing a tax system. These rules must be followed or observed when assessing, collecting and administering taxes. Taxation is aimed at ensuring that every tax payer contributes a fair share to the cost of government activities.

**Simplicity:** The type of tax and method of assessing and collecting taxes have to be simple enough to be understood by both the tax payers and tax collectors. Complicated.

**Equity or fairness:** This means that the tax system has to be fair so that the distribution of the tax burden is equitable (equal/evenly distributed). This is applied in two ways i.e. horizontally or vertically.

**Horizontal equity:** This means that people who earn same income pay same amount of tax.

**Vertical:** This means that people who earn more pay more tax.

**Convenience:** This means that the place, period and the season in which taxes are to be paid have to be convenient to the tax payer. E.g., P.A.Y.E is deducted from the employee's income at the time the employer is paying the salary

**Certainty:** A good tax system is one which ensures that all parties involved know their rights and obligations. A good tax system has to be certain in time and the method and the amount to be paid.

**Economical:** This principle aims at ensuring that the cost of collecting tax is kept as low as possible for both the tax collector and the tax payer. For example the tax collector should not use more than 5% of the amount of taxes being collected.

**Ability to pay:** The tax payer has to be able to pay the tax assessed on him without any problem. The taxes to be paid do not have to curtail the operations of the business or affect the standard of living of the tax payer.

**Elasticity:** A good tax system changes directly with change in tax base. If the tax base increases, the tax yield has to also increase.

**Flexibility:** This principle states that the government has to be able to increase the taxable rates depending on its objectives, needs and policies e.g. if the government is to reduce employment, then the tax rates have to be reduced.

**Productivity:** This states that the taxes have to yield revenue to the government and the same time government calculates correctly how much tax yield the government is to get



using a given tax rate.

**Diversity:** This principle states that the system has to cover as many assets as many aspects as possible i.e. the tax system has to cover all people who earn income in different ways.

**Impartiality:** This principle states that the tax system does not discriminate among tax payers.

**Neutrality:** This principle states that the tax system has not to have serious effects on the economic activities. I.e. the taxes paid do not have to affect resource allocation in the economy/country.

**NB:** Principles of taxation are sometimes called canons of taxation.

### **Characteristics/attributes of a good tax system**

Should be comprehensive i.e. it should cover as many aspects of the economy as possible.

Should be simple and straight to be understood by both the tax payer and the tax collector.

Should yield adequate revenue to the country.

Should promote equity of sacrifice i.e. it should ensure that it ensures social and economic justice.

Should avoid double taxation i.e. It should avoid taxing an item more than once.

Should direct resources to priority areas hence stimulating savings, investment and productivity.

Should recognize basic rights of the tax payers i.e. tax payers should not be harassed, inconvenienced and exploited by the taxing authority.

Should be convenient i.e. it should be made to know when and where to pay the taxes.

Should be flexible i.e. it should be easy to adjust depending on the changes in the income of the tax payer.

Should be impartial i.e. it should discriminate among tax payers. Therefore, a good tax system should be productive and it should not discourage the efforts of the tax payers.

It should be economical i.e. the cost of collecting and administering the tax should not exceed 5% of a tax.

Should ensure economic stability i.e. it should not cause instabilities in the economy like inflation.

### **CLASSIFICATION OF TAXES**

Taxes can be classified according to proportion of one's income that is paid as tax, according to the method of calculation of tax or according to the mode of payment.

Classification of taxes according to one's income paid as tax.

**Proportional tax**, is one where the tax is constant regardless of the different levels of income e.g. corporation tax which is currently 30%.

**Progressive tax** is where the tax rate increases as the income increases. The burden of tax is heavier on higher income earners and lower on low income earners

Progressive taxes reduce the tax incidence of people with lower income as they disproportionately shift the burden to those with higher income.

**Regressive tax**, is one where the tax rate decreases as a person's income increases. The burden is proportionally greatest on lower earner

### Classification of taxes according to method/mode of calculation of tax.

(a). **Advalorem tax** is measured as a percentage of the price of the imported good. These taxes are usually on the value of goods and services

(b). **specific tax**, is a fixed monetary tax per physical unit of good imported e.g. shs. 100,000 per tone of maize flour

Classification of taxes according to type

## DIRECT TAXES

A direct tax is defined as the tax where the liability as well as the burden to pay it resides on the same individual. That is the burden of the tax falls directly on the individual who earns a taxable income and cannot shift the tax to others

### Types of direct taxes

Income tax, this is a tax levied on and paid by the same person according to tax brackets as defined by the income tax department. Income tax takes two forms that is;

**Personal income tax:** Is a tax levied on the income of individuals and it is normally a progressive tax.

**Corporate Tax:** Paid by companies and corporations on their profits.

**NOTE:** The tax base for income tax includes profits from business, rent and royalties from letting assets and income from investments like shares, debentures and other securities and income from employment.

**Wealth Tax:** this is a tax levied on the value of property that a person holds, e.g. savings of an individual or business entity. It may be levied on land, buildings, shares or other investments.

**Inheritance (Estate) Tax:** It is a tax on the estate, or total value of the money and property, of a person who has died.

**Gift Tax:** It is the tax that an individual receiving the taxable gift pays to the government.

**Capital gains tax**, is defined as a tax charged on the profit realized on the sale of a non-inventory asset that was purchased at a lower price. The most common capital gains are realized from the sale of stocks, bonds, precious metals and property.

**Property Tax or millage tax**, it is a tax which the owner pays on the value of the property being taxed. Its determined does the appraisal to determine value of the property, and tax to be paid.

**Fringe Benefit Tax:** Paid by an employer that provides fringe benefits to employees, and is collected by the state government.

## DETERMINING INCOME TAX PAYABLE

**Example 1**

The table below shows the monthly PAYE tax rates in Uganda

| Monthly income (shs)  | Tax liability / tax rate                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0 - 235,000           | NIL                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 235,000 – 335,000     | 10% of the amount by which chargeable income exceeds shs 235,000                                                                                                                                         |
| 335,000 - 410,000     | Shs 10,000 plus 20% of the amount by which chargeable income exceeds shs 335,000                                                                                                                         |
| Exceeding shs 410,000 | Shs 25,000 plus 30% of the amount by which chargeable income exceeds shs 410,000.<br><br>Where chargeable income exceeds shs 10,000,000 an additional 10% is charged on income exceeding shs 10,000,000. |

Calculate the income tax payable by the following employees who earned the following incomes in the month of March 2016.

|          |                |
|----------|----------------|
| Dembe    | shs 235,000    |
| Mulembe  | shs 400,000    |
| Makanika | shs 600,000    |
| musanji  | shs 11,000,000 |

**Solution**

Dembe= tax payable =tax rate x monthly gross salary

**Dembe** pays nil tax because his earnings is below tax threshold

**Mulembe tax payable = Tax rate x gross monthly salary**

$$\begin{aligned}
 &10,000 + 20/100 (400,000 - 335,000) \\
 &10,000 + 20/100 \times 65,000 \\
 &10,000 + 13,000 \\
 &\quad \text{Shs 23,000}
 \end{aligned}$$

Makanika tax payable = tax rate x gross income

25,000 + (600,000 - 410,000)

25,000 + 30/100 x 190,000

25,000 + 57,000

**Shs 82,000**

Musanji taxpayable = tax x gross salary

25,000 + 30/100(11,000,000 - 410,000) + 10/100 x (11,000,000 - 10,000,000)

25,000 + 30/100 x (10,490,000) + (10/100 x 1,000,000)

25,000 + 3,177,000 + 100,000

**Shs 3,302,000**

### Example 2

The following are monthly salaries of workers employed by malika enterprises.

Sefuka Moses shs 200,000

Bumeke Aisha shs 284,000

Wessel AK shs 820,000

Pallaso juma shs 11,000,000

Each employee receives 10% and 5% as Housing and medical allowances respectively

Compute PAYEE paid by the above employees using tax schedule above

**SOLUTION**

Ssfukamoses

Taxable income = basic salary + allowances

= 200,000 + housing allowances (10/100 x 200,000) + medical allowances (5/100 x 200,000)

= shs 200,000 + 28,400 + 14,200

**Shs 326,000**

PAYEE = 10/100 X (326,000 - 235,000)

= 10/100 X 91,600

**SHS 9,160**

Bumeke Aisha = taxable income = basic salary + allowances

284,000 + housing allowances (10/100 x 284,000) + medical allowances (5/100 x 284,000)

= 284,000 + 28,400 + 41,000

**Shs 943,000**

PAYEE = shs 25,000 + 30/100 (943,000 - 410,000)

25,000 + 30/100 x 533,000

25,000 + 159,900

**Shs 184,900**

Pallaso juma, taxable income = basic salary + allowances

11,000,000 + housing allowances (10/100 x 11,000,000) + medical allowances (5/100 x 11,000,000)

11,000,000 + 1,100,000 + 550,000

**Shs 12,650,000**

PAYEE = 25,000 + 30/100 X (12,650,000 - 410,000) + 10/100 X (12,650,000 - 10,000,000)

25,000 + 30/100 X 12, 240,000 + 10/100 X 2, 65,000

SHS25, 000 + 3,672,999 + 265,000

**Shs 3,962,000**

### Example 3

Makanika wange earned the following incomes in shs from different sources for the year 22017

|                                      |           |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| Property income shs                  | 800,000   |
| Business income shs                  | 3,000,000 |
| Employment income shs                | 4,380,000 |
| Expenses and losses for the year shs | 3,000,000 |
| Income that is tax exempt was shs    | 1,180,000 |

The following table shows annual chargeable income tax rate

| Annual chargeable income (shs)                          | Tax liability / tax rate                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Not exceeding shs2,820,000                              | NIL                                                                                 |
| Exceeding shs 2,820,000 but not exceeding shs 4,020,000 | 10% of the amount by which chargeable income exceeds shs 2,820,000                  |
| Exceeding 4,020,000 but not exceeding shs 4,920,000     | Shs 120,000 plus 20% of the amount by which chargeable income exceeds shs 4,020,000 |
| Exceeding shs 4,920,000                                 | Shs 300,000 plus 30% of the amount by which chargeable income exceeds shs 4,920,000 |

Determine Makanika wange`s

Gross income

Chargeable income

Income tax paid

### Solution

Gross income = income from all sources – tax exempted income

=property income +business income + employment income - income exempted from tax

= shs 800,000 +3,000,000+4,380,000)- 1,180,000

= shs 8,180,000- 1,180,000

**= shs 7,000,000**

Chargeable income = gross income – total losses and expenses

=shs 7,000,000 -3,000,000

**=shs 4,000,000**

Income tax= tax rate x chargeable income

10/100 x (4,000,000- 2,820,000)

10/100 x 1,180,000

**= Shs 118,000**

#### Example 4

The following income records relates to bekasa hotel

| Income earner | Employment income<br>shs | Business income<br>shs | Property income<br>shs |
|---------------|--------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| MUTOMBE ALI   | 1,000,000                | 2,000,000              | 3,400,000              |
| NEKESA AISH   | 800,000                  | 1,900,000              | 2,700,000              |
| MEKKA HASSAN  | 1,200,000                | 2,100,000              | 3,800,000              |
| OKELLO BOB    | 600,000                  | 1,400,000              | 2,300,000              |

For each of the above income earned the tax exempted is 8% of their total income.

While the expenses take 12% of the total income

Determine

Gross income

Taxable income

The business also had the following records for workers earnings for the year

Okello shs 750,000

Wambwa shs 310,000

Olupot shs 1,500,000 per month

| Monthly income (shs) | Tax liability / tax rate              |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 0 - 235,000          | NIL                                   |
| 235,000 – 335,000    | 10% of the amount by which chargeable |

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                       | income exceeds shs 235,000                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 335,000 - 410,000     | Shs 10,000 plus 20% of the amount by which chargeable income exceeds shs 335,000                                                                                                                                |
| Exceeding shs 410,000 | <p>Shs 25,000 plus 30% of the amount by which chargeable income exceeds shs 410,000.</p> <p>Where chargeable income exceeds shs 10,000,000 an additional 10% is charged on income exceeding shs 10,000,000.</p> |

Compute PAYEE each worker

## ADVANTAGES OF DIRECT TAXES

They are economical to collect by the government in that the government does not have to spend a lot of money to collect these taxes for instance in the P.A.Y.E system, the government simply deducts the tax from the tax payer's salary.

**They are based on the principle of economic equity**, that is to the economic situation of persons determines the rate at which they are taxed. Also the progressive nature of direct taxation can help reduce income inequalities.

**Certainty of tax to be paid**, The tax payer is certain as to how much tax is to be paid, as the tax rates are decided in advance. The same implies for the government where it can estimate the tax revenue from direct taxes.

**Collection of direct taxes is generally economical.** Like in the case of personal income tax, the tax can be deducted at source (TDS) from the income or salaries of the individuals. So, the government does not have to spend much in tax collection as far as personal income tax is concerned.

**They are Relatively Elastic**, Increase in the income of individuals and companies, leads to increase in the yield from direct taxes also. An increase in tax rates would increase the tax revenues. Thereby, direct taxes are relatively elastic.

Direct taxes help control inflation. When the inflation is on the uptrend, the government increases the tax rate. With an increase in tax rate, the consumption and demand decline, which in turn help reduce inflation.

They redistribute income other than indirect taxes. This is because they are

progressive in nature. This reduces on income inequality.

**They are convenient.** This is because they are collected at the time when the tax payers have earned enough funds e.g. the P.A.Y.E where payments are made in installments.

**They are progressive in nature hence they tend to be fair to the low income groups.** The progressiveness of a tax makes it equitable in the spreading of the tax burden i.e. it makes people to pay according to ability/taxable capacity.

They are easy and simple to understand by the tax payers and collect

They are flexible i.e. they can be increased or reduced depending on the requirements of the economy e. g. if the tax base reduces, the government can also lower the direct taxes.

### **Disadvantages of direct taxes**

**1. they are easy to evade,** this is due to high tax rates, poor documentation and corrupt tax administration, by suppressing the correct information about incomes.

Direct taxes affect savings and investments. Due to tax implications, the net income of individuals reduces, in turn reducing their savings. This results in low investment, affecting the capital formation in the country.

**Arbitrary rate of taxation that** is there is no objective defined for determining the tax rates of direct taxes. Therefore, direct taxes may not always fulfill the requirement of equity.

**Inconvenient,** Direct taxes are inconvenient owing to the lengthy procedure of filing returns. For most people payment of direct tax is a task to convince oneself to pay a part of their income as tax to the state. This is a boost to evade tax further.

The cost of collection is at times high. This is because the government has to employ many officials and pay a lot to do the collection and administer direct taxes this they tend to be less productive.

They tend to discriminate among tax payers especially where tax assessment is not based on impartiality i.e. they do not have a wider coverage.

High rates of direct taxes make the people resent the government in power hence making it popular.

They discourage entrepreneurship especially where the rates of corporate taxes are high.

Due to low taxable capacity in developing countries, little revenue is collected from direct taxes since majority of the people are poor where very few people earn above the threshold of income tax.

### **INDIRECT TAXES:**

These are taxes levied on goods and services paid by an individual or business entity and shifted to the final consumer. These taxes are voluntary in the sense that one paysthem only when buy goods or consume services on which they are levied.

### **Forms/ types of indirect taxes**

**Customs Duty,** this is a tariff or tax imposed on goods when transported across international borders. The purpose of it is to protect the country's economy, jobs by controlling the flow of goods, especially the restrictive and prohibited goods, in and out



of the country. Hence, simply put, it is the tax imposed on imports and exports of goods.  
**NB:** tax on imports is referred to as import duty while tax on exports is export duty.

**Excise duty:** Is a duty levied on commodities that are locally produced and consumed and Payable by the manufacturer who shifts the tax burden to retailers and wholesalers.

**Sales tax:** Is tax levied as a percentage of goods or services sold and paid by a shopkeeper or retailer, who then shifts the tax burden to customers by charging sales tax on goods and services.

**Entertainment Tax:** Liability is on the cinema owners, who transfer the burden to cinema goers

**Service tax:** a Charged on services rendered to consumers, such as food bill in a restaurant, hotels.

### **Value added tax (VAT)**

Is an indirect tax that is paid by a person who consumes or imports goods and/or services in Uganda. The Tax is charged on the value added at different stages of production or supply of goods and services.

#### **Main importance of VAT:**

VAT completely avoids tax cascading as only charges tax on the Value Added.

VAT provide temporary financing for producers and service providers-by law, all VAT able persons are required to deduct the input VAT from the output VAT and remit the difference to the tax authorities monthly or every two months, so such organizations can utilize such funds to meet their working capital needs.

For the Government, VAT is a veritable source of revenue, its broad base, generates more revenue for the government; and secondly, its ease of collection (little or no cost) makes it more economical.

VAT serves as a fiscal policy instrument available to the government and used to increase or reduce VAT rate to redistribute income and check the consumption of harmful commodities such as cigarettes and alcohol.

VAT does not discourage production, or work since it is not a tax on income or profit, taxes on profits might actually discourage investments.

VAT is a powerful tool in harnessing funds in domestic markets enabling Uganda to better meet the challenges facing them such as education, poverty eradication, and provision of infrastructure etc

VAT helps developing economies to be fully integrated in the international economy as being championed by IMF, World Bank of reducing government expenditure and increasing revenue etc.

#### **Demerits of VAT**

It's complicated to understand by the traders

It's difficult to assess

It based on evidence inform of records, this is very difficult to maintain

It discourages investment, as it reduces consumption and hence reduced market

It increases costs of production e.g. Vat on inputs

A high Vat rate makes government in power unpopular

It's easily evaded as traders tend to different records

## **VAT CALCULATIONS**

Computation of VAT occurs at two levels:

- (a) VAT on a transaction i.e. a sale or a purchase
- (b) VAT payable or claimable by the taxpayer other way put is VAT collectable or refundable by URA.

Key terms in VAT Computations

**Output Tax**, This is the VAT a taxable person charges upon making taxable supplies i.e. tax charged upon selling taxable goods and services.

**Input Tax**, This is the VAT a taxable person is charged on taxable purchases and expenses incurred for business purposes. The purchases could be from local sources or imported.

### **Taxable Supply**

This is a supply of goods and/or services other than an exempt supply, by a taxable person for a consideration. A Taxable supply is charged to VAT at either zero rate or standard rate.

## **TAX RATE AND FRACTION**

### **Tax rate**

This is the percentage that is applied to the consideration for a transaction or taxable value, so as to determine the VAT amount. For example: if the consideration or taxable value is Shs 20, 000 and the VAT rate is 18% (18/100), then  $VAT = 20,000 \times 18/100$   
= Shs 3,600

### **Tax fraction**

This refers to the ratio used to determine the amount of VAT where the consideration is inclusive of VAT. The fraction is given by the formula: of VAT. The fraction is given by the formula:

$$R/r + 100$$

Where r is the VAT rate

### **Computation of VAT on a Transaction**

$VAT = \text{Taxable value} \times \text{VAT Rate}$  (where taxable value excludes VAT) or

$VAT = \text{taxable value} \times \text{VAT ratio}$  (where the amount is VAT inclusive).

### **Illustration**

If the rate of tax (r) = 18% then the tax fraction =  $18/(18+100) = 18/118$ .

For example if the consideration (VAT inclusive) is Shs 20, 000, then  $VAT = 20,000 \times 18/118 = \text{Shs } 3051$ .

### **Computation of VAT Payable or Refundable**

$VAT = \text{output tax} - \text{input tax}$

Where output tax is greater than input tax, the taxpayer pays the difference. Where input tax is greater than the output tax, the taxpayer claims the difference.

- (a) If output tax = 100,000 and input tax = 77,000 then VAT payable =  $100,000 - 77,000$

= 23,000

(b) If output tax = 100,000 and input tax = 140,000 then VAT claimable = 140,000 – 100,000 = 40,000

Examples

Mega enterprises had the following VAT exclusive transactions with VAT registered enterprises for one month

Purchases shs 236,000,000

Sales 259,600,000

Calculate the amount of VAT paid by mega enterprises to URA for that period( use 18% as vat rate)

Determine mega enterprises` total sales value vat inclusive

Solution

VAT =output tax –input tax

$18/100 \times 259,600,000 - (18/100 \times 236,000,000)$

Shs 46,728,000-42,480,000

**Shs 4,248,000**

Or

VAT = VAT RATE XVALUE ADDED

$18/100(259,600,000-236,000,000)$

$18/100 \times 23,600,000$

**SHS4, 248,000**

Total sales value (VAT INCLUSIVE)

=SALES VALUE +VAT on sales

$259,600,000 + (18/100 \times 259,600,000)$

$259,600,000 + 46,728,000$

**Shs 306,328,000**

### Example 2

The following VAT exclusive transactions were availed by VAT registered business for the month of January 2018

Mark bought goods worth shs 60,000,000

Mark sold the same goods to Fred for shs 79,000,000

Fred sold the same goods to max a retailer for shs 90,000,000

Max sold the same goods to final consumer for shs 120,000,000

Determine the VAT chargeable for the value added at each stage

### **SOLUTION**

VAT chargeable = VAT rate x value added

Stage 1 VAT chargeable =  $18/100 \times 60,000,000$   
Shs 10,800,000

Stage 2 VAT chargeable = VAT rate x value added  
 $18/100(790,000 - 60,000,000)$   
 $18/100 \times 19,000,000$   
**Shs3,420,000**

Stage 3 VAT chargeable = VAT rate x value added  
 $18/100(90,000,000 - 790,000,000)$   
 $18/100 \times 11,000,000$   
**Shs1,980,000**

Stage 4 VAT chargeable = vat rate x value added  
 $18/100(120,000,000 - 90,000,000)$   
 $18/100 \times 30,000,000$   
**Shs 5,400,000**

The following VAT exclusive transactions were carried out by VAT registered business in February 2016 at different chains of distributions.

Jero bought goods worth shs 9,000,000

Jero sold all the goods to Derrick for shs 11,000,000

Derrick sold the same goods to Jef the retailer for shs 14,000,000

Jef sold the goods to the final consumer for shs 19,000,000

Calculate the VAT chargeable at each stage using VAT rate of 18%.

Advice entrepreneurs on the importance of paying taxes.

### **Advantages of indirect taxes**

Indirect taxes are convenient to the government and tax payers. This is because they are collected when people have the money to spend on a product that a tax have been charged

They tend to contribute more to government revenue, this is because they are comprehensive i.e. they have a wider coverage and types.

They are economical to collect by the government since the government does not pay the traders who collect the taxes.

They are impartial in that they do not discriminate among tax payers thus the government is able to raise more revenue.

They are used to achieve economic stability especially by imposing high taxes on imported goods so as to minimize import inflation.

The revenue yield is high.

They are used to protect infant industries against unfair competition from efficient producers outside the country. This is done by imposing high tariffs on imports which make their prices relatively higher than domestic prices hence making them less competitive.

They are used to safe guard the health and morality of citizens. This can be done by imposing high taxes on goods likely to affect the health and morality of the citizens e.g. drugs, cosmetics, spirits etc. the high tariffs on such commodities make their prices

prohibitively high hence resulting into few people who can afford them.

They are difficult to evade/ dodge because they are embedded in prices of commodities and these commodities must be brought at all costs ie during the buying of goods and services, taxes are paid.

They have a variety of taxes. This increases government revenue

They promote hard work among the tax payers. This is because in an attempt to meet the increasing prices of commodities and maintains the standard of living. People are forced to work hard so as to sustain their economic welfare.

Are flexible i.e. the tax rate can easily be adjusted depending on the desired objectives of the government.

### **Disadvantages of indirect taxes**

They encourage trade mal-practices especially in foreign traders in an attempt to evade taxes through smuggling, under declaring the value of imports all of which have adverse effects on the economy.

Reduce economic welfare of citizens. This is because every product, there is a tax involved in form of increased prices.

They lead to increased costs of production, and this adversely affect the level of investment, production and employment levels within the economy i.e. they act as disincentives for investment.

Indirect taxes like import duties interfere with the freedom of trade hence reducing the volume of international trade.

Revenue from indirect taxes fluctuates a lot. This is because the amount of revenue collected depends on the volume of purchases or sales which normally fluctuates depending on prevailing season, economic situation etc. however; such fluctuations adversely affect planning based on projected revenue from taxes.

They spark off inflation. This is because they lead to increased costs of production which results into increased consumer prices.

When imposed on necessity goods, they become regressive. This is because necessities are consumed by both the rich and the poor in almost similar quantities e.g. sugar and if they are taxed indiscriminately the poor will be adversely be exploited

High indirect taxes cause consumers to change their consumption and expenditure patterns which may reduce their standards of living e.g. if the government imposes high taxes on beer, people may resort to the local brew.

### **DIFFERENCE BETWEEN DIRECT TAX AND INDIRECT TAX:**

There are different implications of direct and indirect taxes on the country. However, both types of taxes are important for the government as taxes include the major part of revenue for the government.

### **Key differences between Direct and Indirect Tax are:**

Direct tax is levied and paid for by individuals, Hindu undivided, firms and companies etc. whereas indirect tax is ultimately paid for by the end-consumer of goods and services.

The burden of tax cannot be shifted in case of direct taxes while burden can be shifted for indirect taxes.

Lack of administration in collection of direct taxes can make tax evasion possible, while indirect taxes cannot be evaded as the taxes are charged on goods and services in form of increases prices.

Direct tax helps in reducing inflation, whereas indirect tax enhances inflation as prices

of raw materials increase.

Direct taxes have better locative effects than indirect taxes as direct taxes put lesser burden over the collection of amount than indirect taxes, where collection is scattered across parties and consumers' preferences of goods is distorted from the price variations due to indirect taxes.

Direct taxes help in reducing inequalities and are considered to be progressive while indirect taxes enhance inequalities and are considered to be regressive.

Indirect taxes involve lesser administrative costs due to convenient and stable collections, while direct taxes have many exemptions and involve higher administrative costs.

Indirect taxes are oriented more towards growth as they discourage consumption and help enhance savings. Direct taxes, on the other hand, reduce savings and discourage investments.

Indirect taxes have a wider coverage as all members of the society are taxed through the sale of goods and services, while direct taxes are collected only from people in respective tax brackets.

Additional indirect taxes levied on harmful commodities such as cigarettes, alcohol etc. dissuades over-consumption, thereby helping the country in a social context.

Indirect taxes are defined according to the ability of the end taxpayer to shift the burden of taxes to someone else. While direct taxes allow the government to collect taxes directly from consumers.

#### **EMPLOYEE'S RELIEF OR TAX EXEMPT**

This refers to gains or income that is not included in the chargeable income of the employee and therefore not taxable on the employee:

The employee's income that is below the taxable threshold, currently at Shs 235,000 per month

Pension.

Discharge or reimbursement of medical expenses actually incurred by the employee.

Life insurance premiums paid by a taxable employer (company/individual) for the benefit of the employee.

Any non-cash benefit whose value is less than Shs 10,000 a month.

Relief of 25% on terminal benefits for employees who have served the employer for at least 10 years.

Passage costs.

Employment income of an expatriate employee in a listed Institution, under a technical assistance agreement subject to the Minister's approval.

Official employment income of persons employed in the armed forces, Uganda Police Force and Uganda Prisons. It excludes persons serving there in civilian capacity.

Employment income of Ugandans posted to work in Ugandan diplomatic missions abroad.

Employment income of persons employed by EADB.

Allowances for members of Parliament

The Dividend received by resident company from another resident company where it controls more than 25% of the total share.

Furniture manufactured using local materials  
 Specialized furniture for use in Hospitals  
 The supply of unimproved land  
 Interest paid by a natural person or by a company to associated company or which is exempted from tax.  
 Beer produced from barley grown and malted in Uganda  
 The supply of unprocessed foodstuffs, including agricultural livestock,  
 Deposits in the bank

### **Employer's Obligation**

To withhold tax from employment income, to deduct the correct tax from the employee's total employment income at the time of effecting payment to every liable employee.

To make Payment, to pay to URA the total tax by the 15<sup>th</sup> day of the month immediately following the month in which employment Income was paid.

To ensure accountability: to account for the tax deducted from every employee on a monthly basis to Uganda Revenue Authority.

To Maintain Employees' Records, and keep those records for inspection by URA on demand for at least five years.

### **Employee's obligation/rights**

Employees should declare to their second employers that have the primary employer incomes from such employment

Declare total tax paid at source as payee

Tax payable

### **Employee's rights**

An employee is not required to furnish a return of income if their source of income is only from a single employer.

A tax payer is entitled to claim refund of overpaid tax where applicable.

A tax payer is entitled to accountability for all taxes deducted and paid at source by the employer.

A tax payer is entitled to prior information before any action is taken by URA.

A tax payer is entitled to equal treatment like any other tax payer.

A tax payer is entitled to confidentiality from URA of personal tax information to be shared in public.

A tax payer is entitled to be attended to by URA officials regarding tax matters

A tax payer has a right to appeal over tax payment in case of need.

## **PROBLEMS OF TAXATION IN UGANDA**



### **(Factors for the low tax base/ taxable capacity in Uganda)**

Much as there is need for the government to levy taxes, the tax system in Uganda faces a lot of challenges that limit government tax revenue collection in the country. Such problems among others include the following:

Low levels of income individuals. The majority of the people in Uganda are poor due to low levels of economic activities in the country. Therefore, the government cannot raise more revenue due to low investment levels.

Presence of a small industrial sector. Most industries in Uganda are small scale leading to low profit margins. Consequently, tax revenue from corporate taxes is limited.

Presence of weak tax administrative machinery. The tax administrative system in Uganda is weak and this is reflected in dishonesty and incompetence of tax officials, low levels of integrity among tax collectors and assessors all of which account for the low tax yield.

Existence of a large informal sector. With limited book keeping, this results into under assessment which reduces the taxes collected and over assessment which reduces the tax resentment hence tax evasion and this reduces tax revenue.

High costs of collection and administration of taxes. This tends to reduce the tax revenue collected as more expenses are incurred in tax collection.

Existence of high rates of tax evasion and tax avoidance. This results into revenue shortages

Increased trade mal-practices. This takes form of smuggling, under declaration of the value of imports and exports, over invoicing and under invoicing of goods and services all of which lead to low taxes.

Existence of high dependency ratio Uganda, where the majority of the people are not working and few people are engaged in production. This reduces the taxable income hence low revenue collecting.

The high of levels of unemployment and under employment in Uganda, this reduces the tax base and tax revenue.

Existence of a large subsistence sector. Uganda is characterized by low output coming out of predominant agricultural sector is largely for home consumption and not commercial use hence low tax revenue.

### **SOLUTIONS TO PROBLEMS OF TAXATION IN Uganda**

Massive industrialization, to widen tax base, increase employment and income tax  
Developing and encouraging use of labour intensive technology to reduce unemployment in most industrial firms, hence creating taxable income.

Carrying out sensitization to Minimize chances of tax evasion and tax avoidance.

Strengthening the functions of URA to reduce trade mal-practices such as smuggling.

Training of tax collectors to improve on tax administration and penalizing or dismissing incompetent and dishonesty tax personnel.

Sensitization of tax payers about the importance of paying taxes. Through carrying out seminars, radio talks shows and community works.

Reducing human interaction to minimize corruption and increase efficiency in tax assessment .e.g. use of on line reporting.

Providing accountability of tax revenue by government. this increases the willingness of the tax taxpayer to pay the tax

Improving on infrastructure, to facilitate easy assessment and collection expenses.



Encouraging businessmen to keep records to avoid under assessment.

## **THE CONCEPT OF TAX EVASION AND AVOIDANCE**

### **Tax avoidance**

it involves the exploitation of loopholes and gaps in tax and other legislation in the tax system in to avoid paying taxes. Those loopholes may be in domestic tax law alone, or between domestic tax law and company law or between domestic tax law and accounting regulations, for example. The process can also seek to exploit gaps that exist between domestic tax law and the law of other countries when undertaking international transactions.

### **Tax evasion**

Tax evasion is the illegal nonpayment or under-payment of taxes, usually resulting from the making of a false declaration or no declaration at all of taxes due to the relevant tax authorities, resulting in legal penalties (which may be civil or criminal) if the perpetrator of tax evasion is caught.

### **Forms of tax evasion and avoidance**

Failure to report income and declaring sources of income.

Under-reporting income (claiming less income than you actually received from a specific source.

Providing false information to the tax authority about business income or expenses.

Deliberately underpaying taxes owed.

Understating taxes to be paid by tax payers.

**Failure to withhold tax and remit it to URA account.**

**Paying employees in cash** and failing to report some or all of these cash payments.

Filing false payroll tax reports.

Double recording of transactions with the intention of evading taxes.

Bribing tax collectors to make under assessment of taxes to be paid.

Smuggling of goods for the intention of evading taxes

## **TAX COMPLIANCE**

The extent to which economic agents pay the taxes that their government has levied as stated by law.

### **Levels of tax compliance**

The level of tax compliance depends on the tax payer`s attitude and knowledge. There are four levels of tax compliance which are as follows;

The tax payers fully comply to pay their taxes and willing to fulfill their obligations without being forced/voluntarily/molested.

Tax payers know that non-compliance is expensive and they accordingly comply.

Tax payers who show slight resistance to comply say it comes due to lack of knowledge. When tax payers are a little bit advised and some pressure is exerted/ put on them, they simply comply.

Tax payers who are non-compliant show out right resistance when it comes to paying their taxes. This group includes some tax payers who become proud after failing to pay their taxes.

### **Factors influencing tax compliance in a country**

The extent to which the tax system is equitable. The tax system which is fair encourages high level of compliance. On the other hand when the tax system is not fair, it discourages tax payers from paying especially when they feel that the distribution of tax burden is not fair.

The tax rates. High tax rates make taxation costly and this makes tax payers to avoid paying the taxes. Low tax rates encourage tax compliance.

The extent to which the tax laws are simple and easy to understand. Complicated tax laws and long administrative procedures make tax compliance to be low because long administrative processes encourage delays and disputes. On the other hand if the method of tax assessment and collection is simple, then people are encouraged to pay the taxes.

The extent to which tax burden is spread to all potential tax payers, where the burden of the tax is fairly distributed, an individual's find it easy to pay taxes and where tax holidays are given to some businesses, then those who not been granted tax holiday don't comply.

The Popularity of government makes people not to pay. A government which is not popular and corrupt discourages people from complying. On the other hand a popular government without corruption encourages tax payers to comply.

Quality of business management, where business managers are unethical such that they don't keep records of accounts then tax compliance does not exist. But where the business managers practice business ethics by keeping records of accounts then tax compliance is possible.

Quality of tax administration; this depends on the level of integrity and customer care shown by the tax collector where the integrity of the tax collectors is good, then the payers comply and pay the taxes. But on the other hand where tax administration is poor in that the tax compliance does not exist.

The extent to which tax laws are consistent and fair, where the tax laws applied are inconsistent and unfair then the tax payers become non-compliant. On the other hand where the application of tax rules is fair encourages compliance.

The extent to which the system is convenient. This is from the principle of convenience which says that the place where to pay the tax has to be known by the tax payer, how much to be paid and when to pay have all be known by the tax payer where the place, the amount of tax and the time of paying tax are unknown then the taxpayers become non-compliant.

### **Manifestation of tax compliance**

Timely filling of the required tax returns

Accurate reporting of income and tax liability  
 Timely payment of all tax obligations  
 Filing tax returns regularly  
 Settling tax liabilities promptly  
 Carrying out audit and providing audit report for tax assessment  
 Voluntarily registering for the tax  
 Keeping up-to-date books of accounts for tax  
 Complying with every tax laws of the country

### **Procedures for tax compliance**

Registration of the tax payer with Uganda revenue authority  
 Obtaining the tax identification number  
 Preparation of tax records  
 Getting assessed for tax  
 Submitting timely tax returns  
 Payment of taxes  
 Receiving feedback from the tax authority

### **Causes of non tax compliance**

Low levels of employment,  
 Inadequate knowledge about taxes  
 Loopholes within the tax system  
 Inadequate skilled staff to assess and collect taxes  
 Political sabotage  
 Desire by the employees to retain all their earnings  
 Inconvenient time for tax collection  
 Corruption and dishonest by the employee and employers  
 Poor methods of handling tax payers  
 High cost of living  
 Failure by government to remit taxes deducted from the employees

### **Measures to encourage tax compliance**

Educating the employee on the need to pay taxes  
 Timely submission of tax returns to URA  
 Being honest in issues related to tax  
 Regularly issuing pay slips  
 Providing ways of how tax payers are able to understand laws related to tax  
 Reducing tax rates to encourage tax payers to pay  
 Ensuring that tax returns are properly posted  
 Informing the tax payers of the consequences of failing to comply by paying taxes in time

### **Consequences of non tax compliance/penalties of non tax compliance**

Paying surcharge on all outstanding tax dues  
 Taking over management of the business by the tax authority  
 Closure of business  
 Taking court action leading to imprisonment

Auctioning business property to recover tax arrears  
 Publishing the business name in newspapers  
 Denying business to access contracts  
 Back listing the business

## **STRUCTURE OF UGANDA'S TAX SYSTEM**

The structure of Uganda's tax system is described by looking at the main aspects of country's taxes. The major aspects include;

The body responsible for collecting taxes in Uganda is the Uganda Revenue Authority

The tax structure is made up of two major departments. That is the inland department internal taxes and the custom department responsible for collecting taxes on imports and exports

The types taxes collected are basically direct and indirect taxes

The main sources of direct taxes are basically income tax, estate duty, capital gain tax, etc

The common indirect taxes are VAT, custom duty and excise duty

The nature taxes, most direct taxes are progressive in nature, that is to they increase as the tax payer's income increases.

The purpose of taxation, it's basically to raise revenue for the government, other reasons include protecting infant industries and controlling consumption in the country.

New taxes are drafted by ministry of finance and discussed by parliament and implemented by URA

## **THE ROLE OF URA IN TAX ADMINISTRATION AND COLLECTION**

The Uganda Revenue Authority is Uganda's' only tax body that was established by act of Parliament.

It is responsible for collecting taxes for national development in Uganda.

The taxes collected are both international and domestic taxes

The Uganda Revenue Authority is an independent institution that gets its mandate from the constitution of Uganda Article 153 of the constitution of Uganda 1995 as Amended which is to the effect that There shall be a Consolidated Fund into which shall be paid all revenues or other monies raised or received for the purpose of, or on behalf of, or in trust for the Government thus on that note it is salient to state that the Revenue Authority is solely responsible for the Collection of taxes in Uganda. It's responsible for collecting both domestic and international taxes

### **TAXES COLLECTED BY URA**

Excise Duty

Excise Duty charged

licensing

Remission of excise duty

Returns and payments

Non tax revenue

Stamp duty

Registration of motor vehicles

Transfer of ownership of motor vehicle

### **Role or responsibilities of URA**

- To advise government on matters related to taxes and tax policies
- Assess and collect taxes e.g. domestic and foreign taxes
- Account for taxes collected to parliament and ministry of finance
- Provide policy frame to government relating to tax rates and administration
- To protect the public against foreign and domestic fraud
- Providing investment opportunities to both local and foreign entrepreneurs
- Verify goods both import and export, this helps to avoid evading taxes
- Recruit personnel for tax evaluation and implementation of tax policies
- Providing avenue for tax payments e.g. encourage tax payers to have tax tin number and tax accounts. This promotes accountability
- Providing information related to taxes to the public, this is done through organizing seminars and workshops
- Developing strategies of increasing tax base for the government, for example finding new tax base

### **CAUSES OF LOW TAX REVENUE**

- Low incomes, which cannot be subjected to taxes
- High levels of corruptions and embezzlement of tax by the tax officials and other employees of government
- Tax evasion, many tax payers deliberately refuse to pay the taxes imposed, thereby limiting the tax revenue collected
- Limited development of the leading sectors of the economic sectors
- High tax concessions granted by the government to different investors, this reduces the tax revenue collected. such concessions include tax holidays, tax exempted etc
- High cost of administering and collecting the taxes, this reduces the tax revenue
- Low tax rates, especially on the locally produced goods. This affects the revenue realized e.g. vat of 18%
- Limited viable commercial activities, Uganda has a big subsistence sector compared to the commercial sector. hence producers produce mainly for their

own consumption and less is put on the market for sale

## Solutions

Developing and implementing strict tax laws

Training tax administrators on the ways of managing tax

Developing friendly laws

Massive investment

Reducing on the tax concession

Carrying seminars to educate tax payers on the importance of paying tax

Making accountability of tax payer's money

Diversification of economic activities to include more tax bases

Improving of economic infrastructures ,to improve on tax collection and tax collection

Providing social services to the community

## TERMS USED IN TAXATION

**Tax base:** Is any item or any economic activity that is to be taxed e.g. property, income, profit or any economic activity on which tax is paid.

**Tax liability:** This refers to the total amount of money a tax payer is expected to pay within a given period of time.

**Taxable income:** This refers to the income which is supposed to be taxed.

**Taxable capacity:** Refers to the extent to which an individual can pay taxes imposed on them without affecting his or her standard of living.

**Threshold of the tax:** Refers to the amount of money or level of income from which tax liability begins.

**Impact of tax,** this refers to final resting position of a tax that to say an entity or individual on which or whom the tax is imposed.

**Incidence of tax:** Refers to the person/ business that finally pay the tax imposed.

**Tax yield:** Refers to the total amount of tax revenue collected from a given number of taxes.

**Average rate of tax:** Refers to the proportion of income that is paid out as tax.

**Average rate of tax (VAT) =  $\frac{\text{tax amount}}{\text{Total income}} \times 100$**

**Marginal rate of tax:** This refers to the proportion of additional income paid out as tax.

**Tax evasion:** Refers to the deliberate refusal by a tax paying unit to pay taxes levied on it.

**Tax avoidance:** This refers to a situation where a tax payer takes advantage of the loopholes/ weaknesses in the tax system so as to pay little tax as possible or pay no tax at all.

**Tax holiday:** Refers to the period of non tax payment given by the government to

reduce consumers spending and encourage investment spending.

**Forward shifting of a tax:** This is when the money burden of the tax is shifted by a tax payer to another party who buys the output being taxed e.g. a manufacturer may shift the burden of tax to the wholesaler who then shifts it to the retailer and the retailer then shifts to the final consumer.

**Back ward shifting of a tax:** This is when the official taxpayer shifts the money (tax) burden of a tax to the person from whom he buys. For instance a producer using a given raw material may shift the money burden to the supplier of such a raw material. E.g. P.A.Y.E

**Tax rebate:** Refers to the refund made under specific circumstances

**Capitalization of tax:** A situation where a tax paying unit usually a firm artificially increase the value of its capital employed so as to reduce its tax liability.

**Hidden tax:** Refers to a tax paid on purchase of goods and services and usually included in the prices of the commodities being bought or taxed.

**Tax haven:** This refers to a situation where a country deliberately offers low tax rates or relaxed/ liberated tax laws so as to attract as much foreign investment and trade as possible.

## **REVISION QUESTIONS**

1. Define the term book keeping.
  - b) Give reasons for book keeping in small businesses.
  - c) Explain the benefits of accounting information in business.
2. a) Write short notes on the following terms as used in business;

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| i. Capital    | vi. Creditor    |
| ii. Expenses  | vii. Debtor     |
| iii. Drawings | viii. Assets    |
| iv. Stock     | ix. Liabilities |
| v. Income     | x. Transactions |

|        |                                             |         |                                  |
|--------|---------------------------------------------|---------|----------------------------------|
| xi.    | An account The purchases/ creditor's ledger | xxiii.  | A contra entry                   |
| xii.   | The sales/ debtor's ledger                  | xxiv.   | A three column cash book         |
| xiii.  | The private ledger                          | xxv.    | A discount                       |
| xiv.   | Cash book                                   | xxvi.   | An overdraft                     |
| xv.    | General/ nominal / real ledger.             | xxvii.  | A trade discount                 |
| xvi.   | Personal accounts                           | xxviii. | A cash discount                  |
| xvii.  | Impersonal account.                         | xxix.   | A petty cashbook                 |
| xviii. | Single entry system                         | xxx.    | Imprest system                   |
| xix.   | Double Entry System.                        | xxxi.   | Purchases journal                |
| xx.    | A ledger book.                              | xxxii.  | Purchases returns day book       |
| xxi.   | The trial balance                           | xxxiii. | Sales returns day book           |
| xxii.  | A two column cash book                      | xxxiv.  | General journal (journal proper) |

- b) Explain the advantages and disadvantages of cash transactions.
3. a) Under what circumstances may an entrepreneur sell goods on credit?
- b) Explain the advantages and disadvantages of selling goods on credit.
- c) Draft guidelines for ensuring proper management of credit sales in business.
4. a) Under what circumstances may goods bought for resale be returned to supplier?
- b) Explain the functions of the journal proper.
- c) What is the importance of financial/ accounting ratios
5. What is meant by the following terms as used in business?



- (i) Final accounts
- (ii) The trading account
- (iii) Stock
- (iv) Opening stock/ stock at start
- (v) Closing stock/ stock at hand/ stock in trade
- (vi) Sales/ selling price
- (vii) Sales returns/ return inwards
- (viii) Net sales/ turnover
- (ix) Purchases return/ return outwards
- (x) Direct expenses
- (xi) Wages
- (xii) Carriage inwards/ carriage on purchases
- (xiii) Net purchases
- (xiv) Cost of goods available for sale
- (xv) Cost of sales/cost price/ sales at cost
- (xvi) Gross profit
- (xvii) Gross loss
- (xviii) The profit and loss account
- (xix) Net loss
- (xx) Carriage outward

6. Differentiate between the following;

- a) Balance sheet and an income statement
- b) Assets and liabilities
- c) Fixed assets and current assets
- d) Long term liabilities and short term/ current liabilities
- e) Capital owned and borrowed capital
- f) Fixed capital and circulating capital
- g) Liquid capital and working capital
- h) Capital employed and owner's equity
- i) Quick asset/ acid test ratio and current ratio
- j) Margin and mark up
- k) Net profit ratio and average stock
- l) Rate of return on capital invested and rate of return on capital employed.
- m) Rate of Stock turnover period and rate of debtors' turnover.

7. a) What is meant by the term cash flow?

b) Explain the importance of cash flow statement in business.

c) What measures can be taken to manage flow of funds in business?

8. a) Distinguish between the following;

- (i) A tax and taxation
- (ii) Tax burden and tax incidence
- (iii) Tax base and tax impact
- (iv) Taxable income and taxable capacity

- (v) Tax avoidance and tax evasion
  - (vi) Tax exemption and tax shifting.
- b) Mention and explain any five principles of taxation.
- c) What are the qualities of a good tax system?
- 9. a) Differentiate between the following?
  - (i) Direct taxes and indirect taxes.
  - (ii) Income tax and corporation tax
  - (iii) Capital gains tax and personal tax
  - (iv) Death tax and inheritance tax
  - (v) Gift tax and import duty
  - (vi) Customs duty and excise duty
  - (vii) Sales taxes Sumptuary tax
  - (viii) Value added tax (VAT) and Export duty.
  - (ix) Progressive tax and regressive tax
  - (x) Proportion tax and advalorem tax
  - (xi) Specific tax and lump sum tax
  - (xii) Tax invoice and taxable value.
  - (xiii) Tax clearance and tax compliance
- b) Explain the advantages and demerits of the following;
  - (i) Direct taxes
  - (ii) Indirect taxes
- c) State the roles of Uganda Revenue Authority.
- 10. a) Examine the factors that influence tax compliance.
- b) Comment on the importance of tax compliance to the business organization.
- c) Suggest measures to encourage tax compliance.

### **BASIC FORMULARS USED IN FINANCIAL ACCOUNTS**

1. Accumulated Depreciation = Initial Cost Of The Asset – Scrap Value
2. Annual Depreciation = Net Book Value X Depreciation Percentage
3. Annual depreciation = 
$$\frac{\text{Initial Cost Of The Asset - Scrap value}}{\text{life span}}$$
4. Annual Depreciation = Cost Of Fixed Assets At The Beginning + Purchases Of Fixed Assets During The Year – Closing Stock Of Fixed Assets
5. Average stock = 
$$\frac{\text{Opening stock} + \text{closing stock}}{2}$$
6. Borrowed Capital = Total Long Term Liabilities  
 Capital Owned = Total Assets – Total Liabilities  
 Cost Of Goods Available For Sale = Opening Stock + Net Purchases  
 Cost Of Sales = Goods Available For Sale – Closing Stock  
 Net Purchases = Purchases - Purchases Returns  
 Net Sales/ Turnover = Sales - Sales Returns/ Return Inwards  
 Owner's Equity = Capital + Net Profit – Drawings  
 Capital Employed = Capital Owned + Borrowed Capital  
 Circulating/ Floating Capital = Total Current Assets  
 Owner's Equity = Capital – Net Loss – Drawings  
 Capital Employed = Fixed Assets + Working Capital
7. Cost Of Sales = Opening Stock + Net Purchases - Closing Stock
8. Creditors' turnover period = 
$$\frac{\text{Total creditors x Number of days in a year}}{\text{Net purchases}}$$
9. Debt to Equity ratio = 
$$\frac{\text{Long -term debt}}{\text{Total Equity}}$$
  
 Rate of stock turnover = 
$$\frac{\text{Cost of sales}}{\text{Average stock}}$$
10. Debt to total assets ratio = 
$$\frac{\text{Long -term debt}}{\text{Total Assets}}$$

$$11. \text{ Debtors' turnover period} = \frac{\text{Total debtors} \times \text{Number of days in a year}}{\text{Net sales}}$$

$$12. \text{ Fixed Capital} = \text{Total Fixed Assets}$$

$$13. \text{ Fixed asset turnover} = \frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Fixed Assets}}$$

$$14. \text{ Fixed asset turnover} = \frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Total Assets}}$$

$$15. \text{ Gross Loss} = \text{Cost Of Sales} - \text{Net Sales}$$

$$16. \text{ Gross profit} = \text{Net Sales} - \text{Cost of sales}$$

$$17. \text{ Liquid Capital} = \text{Total Current Assets} - \text{Stock}$$

$$18. \text{ Margin} = \frac{\text{Gross profit}}{\text{Net sales}} \times 100$$

$$19. \text{ Margin} = \frac{\text{Gross profit}}{\text{Net sales}} \times 100$$

$$20. \text{ Mark up} = \frac{\text{Gross profit}}{\text{Cost of sales}} \times 100$$

$$21. \text{ Net Book Value} = \text{Cost} - \text{Accumulated Depreciation}$$

$$22. \text{ Net profit ratio} = \frac{\text{Net profit}}{\text{Net sales}} \times 100$$

$$23. \text{ Percentage of expenses to turnover} = \frac{\text{Total expenses} \times 100}{\text{Net sales}}$$

$$\text{Rate of creditor's turnover} = \frac{\text{Net purchases}}{\text{Total creditors}}$$

$$24. \text{ Quick asset ratio} = \frac{\text{Current assets} - \text{stock}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$$

$$25. \text{ Rate of debtors' turnover} = \frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Total debtors}}$$

$$\text{Rate of return on capital employed} = \frac{\text{Net profit}}{\text{Capital employed}} \times 100$$

26.

$$\text{Rate of return on capital invested} = \frac{\text{Net profit}}{\text{Owner's equity}} \times 100$$

$$27. \text{ Stock turnover period} = \frac{\text{Average stock}}{\text{Cost of sales}} \times \text{Number of days/months in a year}$$

$$28. \text{ Working capital / Current ratio} = \frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$$

$$29. \text{ Working capital} = \text{Current Assets} - \text{Current Liabilities}$$

1. The following information relates to St Lawrence International Enterprises in Kyotera for the month of May 2010. On 1/5/2017. The business was started with Shs. 80,000 as capital.

5/5/2017 bought a machine for cash shs 28,000

8/5/2017 sold goods for cash shs 30,000

14/5/2017 bought goods for cash shs 35,000

22/5/2017 paid for insurance in cash shs 180,000

23/5/2017 paid electricity in cash shs 24,000

28/5/2017 cash drawings shs 120,000

30/5/2017 paid wage in cash shs 130,000

Required:

- (i) Record the above transactions in St Lawrence International Enterprises Account and balance it at the end of the months.
- (ii) Open up the necessary ledger's accounts.
- (iii) Prepare the **balanced ledger accounts** for the business.

2. The following information relates to Mbata's business in Kisenyi for the month of December 2016. On 1/12/2016 Mbata started business with Shs. 80,000 as his capital.

2/12/16 bought a machine for cash Shs 28,000

6/12/16 sold goods for cash Shs. 3,000

10/12/16 bought goods for cash Shs. 35,000

14/12/16 paid for insurance in cash Shs 18,000

20/12/16 paid electricity in cash Shs 24,000

24/12/16 sold more goods for cash Shs 35,000

29/12/16 cash drawings Shs 12,000

29/12/16 paid wages in cash Shs 13,000

Required;

- (i) Prepare a well balanced cash discount
- (ii) Open up all the necessary ledger accounts and balance them
- (iii) Extract a **trial balance** as at 29<sup>th</sup> December 2016.

3. The following information relates to Wansolo for the month of JAN 2015.

1/1/15 Wansolo started business with balance brought forward: cash Shs 190,000 and Bank shs 150,000.

4/1/15 bought goods by cash Shs 80,000

6/1/15 paid transport by cash shs 30,000

7/1/15 bought more goods by cheque shs 100,000

9/1/15 sold goods by cash shs 70,000

12/1/15 received a cheque from Wambuzi shs. 50,000

14/1/15 paid rent by cheque shs 30,000

15/1/2015 sold more goods by cheque shs 120,000

18/1/15 paid Sarah by cash shs 40,000

22/1/15 withdrew money from business for personal use Shs 20,000

Required;

- (i) Enter the above transactions in Wansolo's **two column cash book** and balance it at the end of the month.
- (ii) Open up the necessary ledger accounts and balance them
- (iii) Extract a trial balance.

4. The following information relates to Besigye for the month of February 2018

1/2/18 Besigye started business with cash in hand shs 100,000 and cash at bank shs 350,000

4/1/18 Received a cheque shs 150,000

6/2/18 Cash purchases shs 150,000

9/2/18 Cash sales 200,000

10/2/18 Cashed a cheque shs 100,000

13/2/18 bought stationery in cash shs 20,000

14/ 2/18 ppaid cash into bank shs 50,000

15/2/18 Cash sales paid directly into bank shs 50,000

16/2/18 Withdrew cash from the bank for business use Shs 80,000

18/2/18 Paid Mao by Cheque Shs 90,000

19/2/18 Deposited cash into bank shs 60,000

20/2/18 Paid rent by cheque shs 100,000

21/2/18 Banked Cash shs 80,000

22/2/18 Kadaga paid us by cheque shs 200,000

23/2/18 Cash drawings shs 40,000



24/2/18 Withdraw cash from bank for private use Shs 20,000

27/2/18 Paid Kato Lubwama by Cheque shs 50,000

30/2/18 Withdrew cash from the bank Shs 100,000

Required;

- (i) Enter the above the transactions in a suitably **ruled two column cashbook** and balance it at the end of the month.
- (ii) Open up the necessary ledger accounts.
- (iii) Extract a trial balance

5. Wankoko bought 50 boxes of water at Shs 10,000 each. The supplier allowed him a 12% and 10% trade discount and cash discount respectively.

Calculate;

- (i) Trade discount
- (ii) Cash discount
- (iii) **Amount he actually paid.**

6. The following information relates to Faith during the month of April 2018.

1<sup>st</sup> April Faith started business with cash at hand Shs 46,000 and cash at bank shs 93,000

2<sup>nd</sup> –Bought goods by cheque shs 28,000

3<sup>rd</sup> –Cash sales shs 44,000

5<sup>th</sup> \_ Banked cash shs 25,000

7<sup>th</sup> \_Paid by cheque the following in each case less cash discount of 5%

Nakamatte Shs 16,000

Hillary Shs 30,000

8<sup>th</sup>- Received cheques from the following in each case less a cash discount of 3%

James shs 40,000

Amelia shs 30,000

10<sup>th</sup> Bought furniture by cheque shs 29,000

12<sup>th</sup> Cash drawing shs 10,000

13<sup>th</sup> paid Edward by cash shs 19,000 in full installments of his account of Shs 20,000

15<sup>th</sup> cash sales paid directly into bank shs 35,000

17<sup>th</sup> paid salaries by cash shs 15,000

20<sup>th</sup> cashed a cheque shs 18,000

24<sup>th</sup> received cash from Moreen shs 24,000 after a cash discount of shs 1000

25<sup>th</sup> paid wages in cash 13,000

27<sup>th</sup> paid Patience by cheque shs 13,000 having deducted shs 2000 cash discount

30<sup>th</sup> Received a cheque from Maria Rose shs 20,000 after a cash discount of 5%

Required;

- (i) Write **a three column cashbook** from the above transactions and balance it at the end of the month.
- (ii) Open up the necessary ledger accounts dully balanced and show the discounts accounts in the general ledger
- (iii) Extract a trial balance.

7. The following information relates to K2 for the month of March 2017

| 2017             | invoices received | invoice no. | Amount (shs) |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------|--------------|
| 3 / 4            | Kyotera TRADERS   | 120         | 48,000       |
| 10 <sup>th</sup> | Kampala traders   | 127         | 50,000       |
| 14 <sup>th</sup> | Arua SUPPLIERS    | 203         | 30,000       |

|                  |                    |     |        |
|------------------|--------------------|-----|--------|
| 21 <sup>th</sup> | Herbert Solar      | 123 | 36,000 |
| 24 <sup>th</sup> | Rwenzori group     | 334 | 60,000 |
| 29 <sup>th</sup> | Kasolo INVESTMENTS | 207 | 45,000 |

Required;

- (i) Prepare K2 **purchases day book**
- (ii) Post the transactions to the purchases ledger and general ledger

8. The following balances appeared in the books of Kaddongo Kamu Association on 31<sup>st</sup> December 2017.

|                  |            |
|------------------|------------|
|                  | Shs.       |
| Cash             | 2,000,000  |
| Bank             | 4,000,000  |
| Stock            | 6,000,000  |
| Furniture        | 10,000,000 |
| Bank loan        | 3,000,000  |
| <b>Creditors</b> |            |
| Walukagga        | 1,500,000  |
| Ssegawa          | 2,500,000  |
| <b>Debtors.</b>  |            |
| Kappo            | 800,000    |
| Ndugga           | 200,000    |

During the month of January 2018, the following transactions took place.

January 1<sup>st</sup> Sold stock shs 800,000 in cash

4<sup>th</sup> Walukagga was paid shs, 1450,000 by cheque

9<sup>th</sup> Received cash from Kikofira shs 120,000

13<sup>th</sup> Withdrew shs 1000,000 from the bank for office use.

22<sup>nd</sup> Sold goods to Golden Ss 800,000

Required to;

- (i) Prepare **the journal proper** to record the opening balance and ascertain capital.
- (ii) Journalize the transactions that took place during January 2018
- (iii) Open up the ledger accounts and record the transactions.
- (iv) Extract a trial balance.

9. The following balances appeared in the books of Kyewubiradda as at 30<sup>th</sup> July, 2017

| ITEM          | Shs.    |
|---------------|---------|
| Opening stock | 150,000 |
| Sales         | 600,000 |
| Purchases     | 350,000 |
| Closing stock | 100,000 |

(a) Calculate;

- (i) Cost of goods available for sale
- (ii) Cost of sales
- (iii) Gross profit

(b) Prepare the **trading account**.

10. Walugembe had the following items after taking out a trading account on 30/08/2017

| ITEM               | SHS     |
|--------------------|---------|
| Gross profit       | 472,000 |
| Rent               | 94,000  |
| Transport          | 30,000  |
| Salaries and wages | 60,000  |

|                   |         |
|-------------------|---------|
| General expenses  | 100,000 |
| Carriage outwards | 42,000  |
| Discount allowed  | 20,000  |
| Discount received | 60,000  |

Required;

Prepare Walugembe's **profit and loss account** as at that date.

11. Museven's business showing the following balances as at 31/12/2016

| ITEMS              | Shs.     |
|--------------------|----------|
| Opening stock      | 380,000  |
| Carriage outwards  | 150,000  |
| Discount allowed   | 5000     |
| Discount received  | 4500     |
| Rent received      | 5500     |
| Net purchases      | 3800,000 |
| Net sales          | 6500,000 |
| Closing stock      | 220,000  |
| Carriage inwards   | 200,000  |
| Electricity        | 23,000   |
| Telephone          | 44,000   |
| Advertising        | 220,000  |
| Rates              | 14,000   |
| Salaries and wages | 517,000  |
| Insurance          | 370,000  |

Transport 281,000

Required:

Prepare Museven's

- (i) **trading and profit and loss account** for the period ending 31/12/2016.
- (ii) **Income statement.**

12. The following balances were extracted from the book of accounts of Ssekandi as at 31<sup>st</sup> December 2016.

| ITEM            | SHS     |
|-----------------|---------|
| Capital         | 700,000 |
| Equipment       | 20,000  |
| Furniture       | 80,000  |
| Stock           | 150,000 |
| Debtors         | 100,000 |
| Creditors       | 200,000 |
| Bank loan       | 200,000 |
| Bank overdraft  | 100,000 |
| Land            | 500,000 |
| Unpaid salaries | 50,000  |
| Drawings        | 100,000 |
| Cash at bank    | 150,000 |
| Net profit      | 400,000 |
| Prepaid rent    | 50,000  |
| Cash in hand    | 200,000 |

Buildings 300,000

Required: Prepare Ssekandi's balance sheet as at 31/12/2016.

13. A motor cycle was bought for shs. 1,600,000 and it was expected to have a life span of 4 years. Calculate the;
- (i) Depreciation to be charged annually
  - (ii) Accumulated depreciation.
14. MANGERE bought a machine at shs. 200,000,000 on 1<sup>st</sup> jan. 2018 and depreciation was to be charged at 10% per annum on reducing balance. Calculate:
- (i) Value of depreciation for three years.
  - (ii) The next book value of the asset for each of the three years.
  - (iii) Accumulated depreciation (total depreciation after three years)
15. Given the Trial balance of St Lawrence International Enterprises- Kyotera as at 31<sup>st</sup> June 2018.

**ST LAWRENCE INTERNATIONAL ENTERPRISES-KYOTERA**

**TRIAL BALANCE**

**AS AT 31<sup>st</sup> JUNE 2018**

| <b><u>PARTICULARS</u></b> | <b><u>DEBIT</u></b> | <b><u>CREDIT</u></b> |
|---------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
|---------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|

|                                  | <u>Shs</u> | <u>Shs.</u> |
|----------------------------------|------------|-------------|
| Stock 1 <sup>st</sup> july 2017  | 10,000     |             |
| Purchases                        | 1100,000   |             |
| Sales                            |            | 2,000,000   |
| Bad debts                        | 12,000     |             |
| Discount received                |            | 10,000      |
| Discount allowed                 | 20,000     |             |
| Motor van cost                   | 100,000    |             |
| Cash at hand                     | 20,000     |             |
| Debtors                          | 50,000     |             |
| Creditors                        |            | 30,000      |
| Provision for bad debts          |            | 20,000      |
| Capital                          |            | 410,000     |
| Cash at bank                     | 40,000     |             |
| Returns outwards                 |            | 50,000      |
| Electricity                      | 70,000     |             |
| Salaries                         | 80,000     |             |
| Rent                             | 18,000     |             |
| Carriage inwards                 | 60,000     |             |
| Land at cost                     | 1,000,000  |             |
| Equipment at cost                | 200,000    |             |
| <b>Accumulated depreciation:</b> |            |             |
| Motor van                        |            | 20,000      |
| Equipment                        |            | 40,000      |
| Returns inwards                  | 100,000    |             |





(b) A Balance Sheet as at that date.

16. Use the following information to answer the questions that follow;

TEACHERS' CANTEEN INCOME STATEMENT FOR THE PERIOD ENDED 31<sup>ST</sup> DEC.  
2013

SUMMARY

|                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| Net sales               | 240,000,000        |
| Less cost of goods sold | <u>180,000,000</u> |
| Gross profit            | 60,000,000         |
| Less operating expenses | <u>25,000,000</u>  |
| Net profit              | 35,000,000         |

Note:

The opening stock as at the start of 2013 was Shs. 23,000,000

Teachers' canteen Balance Sheet

As at 31.12.2013

| Shs.                          | Shs.              | Shs.                   |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| Capital                       | 89,000,000        |                        |
| Add: net profit               | <u>35,000,000</u> | <u>Fixed Assets:</u>   |
|                               | 124,000,000       | Buildings              |
| Less: drawings                | <u>10,000,000</u> | 82,000,000             |
|                               | 114,000,000       | Furniture              |
| <u>Long-term liabilities:</u> |                   | 50,000,000             |
| 5 year loan from teachers'    |                   | <u>Current Assets:</u> |
| SACCO                         |                   | Stock                  |
| 72,000,000                    |                   | 47,000,000             |
| <u>Current liabilities:</u>   |                   | Debtors                |
|                               |                   | 38,000,000             |

|                              |                    |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| Bank overdraft<br>34,000,000 | Bank<br>25,000,000 |
| Creditor<br>40,000,000       | Cash<br>18,000,000 |
| 260,000,000                  | 260,000,000        |

Required:

(a) Calculate the following ratios;

- i) Gross profit margin (03 marks)
- ii) Net profit to sales (03 marks)
- iii) Net profit to owner's equity (03 marks)
- iv) Acid test (03 marks)
- v) Stock turnover (03 marks)
- vi) Fixed assets turnover (03 marks)
- vii) Debt to owner's equity (gearing ratio) (03 marks)

(b) Interpret the following ratios in relation to 5(a) above:

- (i) Debt to owners' equity (02 marks)
- (ii) Net profit to sales (02 marks)

17. The following list of assets, liabilities and capital was obtained from the books of Lillian as at 31<sup>st</sup> October 2015.

| Details | Shs.      |
|---------|-----------|
| Capital | 8,380,000 |
| Land    | 6,000,000 |

|                  |           |
|------------------|-----------|
| Cash at hand     | 260,000   |
| Cash at bank     | 300,000   |
| Machinery        | 2,400,000 |
| Furniture        | 1,400,000 |
| 2 year loan      | 2,600,000 |
| 5 year bank loan | 2,000,000 |
| Office equipment | 1,600,000 |
| Building         | 180,000   |
| Creditors        | 800,000   |
| Debtors          | 800,000   |
| 3 year bank loan | 1,200,000 |
| Bank overdraft   | 700,000   |
| Stock            | 400,000   |

Calculate the following;

- (i) Capital net worth
- (ii) Working capital
- (iii) Working capital ratio
- (iv) Liquid funds
- (v) Liquid capital
- (vi) Liquid capital ratio
- (vii) Circulating capital
- (viii) Fixed capital
- (ix) Capital employed
- (x) Borrowed capital.

18. The information below relates to Joanitah beauty centre transactions for the month of September and October 2017.

| TRANSACTIONS                   | NOVEMBER   | DECEMBER   |
|--------------------------------|------------|------------|
|                                | Shs. "000" | Shs. "000" |
| Purchase of Assets             | 2,000      | 2,500      |
| Payment of wages               | 90         | 1,000      |
| Receipts from sales            | 1,000      | 1,500      |
| Loan                           | 3,000      | 2,000      |
| Repayment of loan installment  | 500        | 4,500      |
| Payment of rent                | 60         | 70         |
| Purchase of raw materials      | 1000       | 1,500      |
| Sales of refreshments          | 2560       | 3,000      |
| Taxes                          | 100        | 120        |
| Debtors                        | 300        | 350        |
| Creditors                      | 160        | 150        |
| Acquisition of furniture       | 180        | 170        |
| Grants from friends            | 200        | 140        |
| Disco dance collections        | 4000       | 4,500      |
| Sale of old furniture receipts | 120        | 100        |
| Rates                          | 150        | 160        |
| Transport expenses             | 100        | 90         |
| Installation of new machinery  | 250        | 200        |
|                                | 160        | 200        |
|                                | 70         | 72         |



2. All the businesses dealt with in project work must be given names, which must not be abbreviated.
3. The name of the business must reflect the nature of the business. This may be an agribusiness, trading, manufacturing or service business. The line of business must be specific. If the business is a company the name ends with limited or company or both.
4. The address used must include box No. and the town the box no is found.
5. The location must be definite. It must include the District, County, Sub county, Parish, Village, Town, Road, Avenue, Street and Plot No.
6. The date for preparing a document is that for the day of sitting the test/exam.
7. Headings for guidelines, programmes, schedules and budgets must include the name and address of the business and/ or the venue and date.
8. All amounts columns for documents prepared and for any numerical values must indicate the currency unit.
9. Budget prepared must include the heading, item currency units for amounts and total amount.
10. Working capital requirements must begin with the major inputs of the business.
11. Guidelines/ policy documents must be prepared using “shall” avoid (We, I, He, She, They etc..)
12. Business plan items are presented using present simple tense
13. All documents must be framed and the name of the document must be inside the frame.
14. In letter writing, the complementary close must be perpendicularly below the business name and address. The salutation must be above the subject line.
15. Misspelling technical terms. Penalty 100% i.e. 00marks.

### **PAPER 2 EXAMINATION FORMAT AND SAMPLE.**

### **PAPER 230/2**

This paper is the entrepreneurship skills application paper that tests the students' ability to apply learnt entrepreneurship skills in real business situations. The paper has six (6)

optional questions; a candidate is required to answer only Four (4) questions each carrying 25 marks giving a total of 100 marks. This paper has four (4) project illustration questions and two (2) accounts or financial management questions.

**SAMPLE TEST 1**  
**Uganda Advanced Certificate of Education**  
**ENTREPRENEURSHIP EDUCATION**  
 P230/2  
 3 hours

**Instructions to the Candidates:**

- ✓ *Answer four questions.*
- ✓ *All questions carry equal marks.*

1. You have established a soft drink plant and you are looking forward towards expanding it by introducing a new brand.

a) Design a market survey guide you will use when carrying out a market research.

b) Present a production plan for your business. (7 marks)

c) Draft a purchase order for materials to be used. (5 marks)

d) Develops guidelines for customer care to your workers. (5 marks)

2. You have established a project dealing in agricultural produce which is expanding rapidly and you have decided to recruit more man power to handle the expansion requirements.

a) Present a job application form. (6 marks)

b) Design a program for recruitment for workers. (7 marks)

c) Prepare rules and regulations for the workers. (7 marks)

d) Draft a stock ledger to be used in your business. (5 marks)

3. You are a production manager of gifted hands entrepreneurs. You have received complaints from students about declining quality of your products and you have agreed to acquire a loan to improve on the quality.

a) Design a loan repayment schedule. (6 marks)

b) Prepare quality policies for your products. (8 marks)

c) Present a budget for the loan funds. (7 marks)



- d) Draft an advert for gifted hands entrepreneurs. (5 marks)

4. The following information was obtained from the books of Movit enterprises Ltd for the year ended 2014.

- i) The business had cash of Shs 200,000 on 1<sup>st</sup> of March 2014
- ii) The business expects to sell goods every month worth Shs 20 million and receive only 80% in the month of sale and the remaining balance is received the following month.
- iii) Monthly projected salaries for 50 workers were Shs 150,000 per worker.
- iv) The business hopes to get a loan of Shs 2,000,000 in April.
- v) The monthly interest on the loan is 5% payable after one month grace period.
- but v) The business expects donations in cash worth Shs 3,000,000 per month this is expected to reduce by 10% after the first three months.
- to vi) Monthly rent income is expected to be Shs 5,000,000 but this is expected to increase by 3% after the first two months.
- first vii) The business hopes to buy premises cash worth Shs 35,000,000 in the month.
- viii) Monthly cash purchases Shs 6,000,000
- and ix) The business bought machinery in the month of April at Shs 15,000,000 paid Shs 7,000,000 the balance is to be paid into two equal installments in the following months.

Required:

- a) Prepare a cash flow statement for four months. (20 marks)
- b) How can the business avoid a cash flow deficit? (5 marks)

5. You are operating a small clay workshop and you want to expand the workshop by recruiting more workers.

- a) Prepare an induction program for the new workers. (8 marks)
- b) Write a letter inviting all heads of department to a man power planning meeting. (6 marks)
- c) Develop guidelines to be followed to ensure safety of the work place. (6 marks)
- d) Design an administrative structure of your business. (5 marks)

6. The following trial balance was extracted from the books of Muko and sons enterprises Ltd as at 31<sup>st</sup> December 2014.

| Details               | Debit (Shs)       | Credit (Shs)      |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Capital               |                   | 10,000,000        |
| Purchases             | 4,000,000         |                   |
| Fixtures and fittings | 850,000           |                   |
| Moto lorry            | 2,500,000         |                   |
| Sale                  |                   | 6,500,000         |
| Discounts             | 5,000             | 4,500             |
| Rent received         |                   | 5,500             |
| Insurance             | 354,000           |                   |
| Transport             | 281,000           |                   |
| Electricity           | 25,000            |                   |
| Debtors               | 2,500,000         |                   |
| Creditors             |                   | 844,500           |
| Rates                 | 15,000            |                   |
| Stock 1 – 1 – 2014    | 380,000           |                   |
| Salaries and wages    | 220,000           |                   |
| Bad debts             | 44,000            |                   |
| Drawings              | 15,000            |                   |
| Bank balance          | 5,900,000         |                   |
| Cash balance          | 110,500           |                   |
| <b>Total</b>          | <b>17,354,500</b> | <b>17,354,500</b> |

**Additional information:**

- i) Depreciation on fixtures and fittings was provided at 2% and 5% for motto lorry per annum.

- ii) Un sold stock on 31<sup>st</sup> December 2014 was Shs 220,000.
- iii) Of the electricity paid Shs 2,000 was advance and Shs 1,000 for rent was prepaid Shs 16,000 was outstanding in respect of insurance.

**REQUIRED:**

- a)
  - i) Rate of stock turn over. (3 marks)
  - ii) Gross profit ratio (3 marks)
  - iii) Acid test ratio (3 marks)
  - iv) Average credit period for debtors in months. (3 marks)
  - v) Net capital employed (3 marks)
- b) Prepare a balance sheet for Muko and sons enterprises Ltd as at 31<sup>st</sup> December 2014. (10 marks)

**END**

**May God bless you.**

**Any submissions on inquiry or edition are highly welcome.**

**Facebook: Walugembe Lawrence**

**Twitter: lawrencewalu256**

**WhatsApp: 0759748844**

**Email: warenwaren2@gmail. com**

**Mobile: 0783177885 or +256792 328466**

**Look for Paper 1 and 3 by the same author with more revision questions.**

**©Copyright reserved.**